

This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any agency determination or policy.

**Revised Draft
NIOSH CURRENT INTELLIGENCE BULLETIN**

**Asbestos Fibers and Other Elongated Mineral Particles:
State of the Science and Roadmap for Research**

January 20, 2009

**Department of Health and Human Services
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health**

Foreword

Asbestos has been a highly visible issue in public health for over three decades. During the mid- to late-20th century, many advances were made in the scientific understanding of worker health effects from exposure to asbestos fibers and other elongated mineral particles (EMPs), and it is now well documented that fibers of asbestos minerals, when inhaled, can cause serious diseases in exposed workers. However, many questions and areas of confusion and scientific uncertainty remain. For instance, due to the mineralogical complexity of the asbestos minerals, the scientific literature contains various inconsistencies in the definition and application of the term asbestos for health protection guidance and regulatory purposes.

As the Federal agency responsible for conducting research and making recommendations for the prevention of worker injury and illness, the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) is undertaking a reappraisal of how to ensure optimal protection of workers from exposure to asbestos fibers and other EMPs. As a first step in this effort, NIOSH convened an internal work group to develop a framework for future scientific research and policy development. The NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group prepared a draft of this *State of the Science and Roadmap for Scientific Research (Roadmap)*, which summarized NIOSH's understanding of occupational exposure and toxicity issues concerning asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

NIOSH invited comments on the occupational health issues identified and the framework for research suggested in the first draft *Roadmap*. NIOSH sought other views about additional key issues that need to be identified, additional research that needs to be conducted, and suggested methods to conduct the research. In particular, NIOSH sought input from stakeholders concerning study designs, techniques for generating size-selected fibers, analytic approaches, sources of particular types of EMPs suitable for experimental studies, and worker populations suitable for epidemiological study. Based on comments received during the public and expert peer review process, NIOSH revised the *Roadmap* and invited public review of the revised version by stakeholders. After further revision, NIOSH is now disseminating this December 2008 version of the document. While this December 2008 version of the *Roadmap* includes a clarified rewording of the existing NIOSH REL, this is only included for the purpose of providing a better understanding of the basis for the proposed research. It is not intended to establish new or revise existing NIOSH occupational health policy relating to asbestos, and no regulatory response by OSHA or MSHA is requested or expected. The purpose of the *Roadmap* is to outline a research agenda that will guide the development of specific research programs to be conducted by NIOSH and others, both within and across disciplines to provide answers to current scientific questions, reduce scientific uncertainties, and provide a sound scientific foundation for future policy development. NIOSH continues to be interested in available and forthcoming research results that can help answer the questions set forth in the

Roadmap, as well as information on existing workplace exposure data, health effects, and control technologies.

NIOSH recognizes that results from toxicity research on asbestos fibers and other EMPs may impact both occupational as well as environmental health policies and practices. Many of the issues that are important in the workplace are also important to communities and to the general population. Therefore, NIOSH intends to continue to pursue partnerships with Federal agencies, including the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR), the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA), the National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences (NIEHS), the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), the National Toxicology Program (NTP), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), and the United States Geological Survey (USGS), as well as with labor, industry, academia, health and safety practitioners, and other interested parties, including international groups. These partnerships will help to focus the scope of the research that will contribute to the scientific understanding of asbestos fibers and other EMPs, to fund and conduct the research activities, and to develop and disseminate informational materials describing results from the research on EMPs and their implications for occupational and public health policies and practices.

Christine Branche Ph.D.
Acting Director
January 2009

CONTENTS

Foreword.....	i
Executive Summary.....	vi
Acknowledgements.....	xi
NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group.....	xi
Peer Reviewers.....	xii
Abbreviations	xiii

1 REVIEW OF CURRENT ISSUES.....	1
1.1 Introduction.....	1
1.2 Minerals and Mineral Morphology.....	2
1.3. Trends in Asbestos Use, Occupational Exposures, and Disease.....	3
1.3.1 Trends in Asbestos Use.....	3
1.3.2 Trends in Occupational Exposure.....	4
1.3.3 Trends in Asbestos-related Disease.....	6
1.3.3.1 Asbestosis.....	6
1.3.3.2 Malignant Mesothelioma.....	7
1.4 Clinical Issues.....	8
1.5 The NIOSH Recommendation for Occupational Exposure to Asbestos	10
1.5.1 Minerals Covered by the NIOSH REL	12
1.5.1.1 Chrysotile.....	12
1.5.1.2 Amphibole Asbestos and Other Fibrous Minerals.....	14
1.5.1.3 Nonasbestiform Analogs of the Asbestos Varieties	15
1.5.1.3.1 Rationale for NIOSH Policy.....	15
1.5.1.3.2 Epidemiological Studies.....	17
1.5.1.3.3 Animal Studies.....	27
1.5.1.3.4 Analytical Limitations.....	28
1.6 Determinants of Particle Toxicity and Health Effects.....	30
1.6.1. Deposition.....	30
1.6.2 Clearance and Retention.....	31
1.6.3 Biopersistence and other Potentially Important Particle Characteristics.....	33
1.6.3.1 Biopersistence.....	33
1.6.3.2 Other Potentially Important Particle Characteristics.....	37
1.6.4 Animal and <i>In Vitro</i> Toxicity Studies.....	37
1.6.4.1 Model Systems Used to Study EMP Toxicity.....	38
1.6.4.2 Studies on Effects of Fiber Dimension.....	39
1.6.4.3 Initiation of Toxic Interactions.....	40
1.6.4.3.1 Reactive Oxygen Species.....	41
1.6.4.3.2 Membrane Interactions.....	42
1.6.4.3.3 Morphology-mediated Effects.....	43

CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

1.6.4.3.4 Cellular Responses to Initiation of Toxicity.....	44
1.6.4.4 Studies Comparing EMPs from Amphiboles with Asbestiform versus Nonasbestiform Habits	47
1.6.5 Thresholds.....	51
1.7 Analytical Methods.....	54
1.7.1 NIOSH Sampling and Analytical Methods for Standardized Industrial Hygiene.....	55
1.7.2 Analytical Methods for Research.....	56
1.7.3 Differential Counting and Other Proposed Analytical Approaches for Differentiating EMPs	58
1.8 The 1990 Recommendation for Occupational Exposure to Asbestos	59
1.8.1 Comments to OSHA.....	59
1.8.2 Testimony at OSHA Public Hearing	60
1.8.3 Clarification of the NIOSH Recommended Exposure Limit	60
1.9 Summary of Key Issues.....	62
2 FRAMEWORK FOR RESEARCH.....	64
2.1 Strategic Research Goals and Objectives.....	64
2.2 Develop a Broader Understanding of the Important Determinants of Toxicity for Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	66
2.2.1 Conduct <i>In Vitro</i> Studies to Ascertain the Physical and Chemical Properties That Influence the Toxicity of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	70
2.2.2 Conduct Animal Studies to Ascertain the Physical and Chemical Properties That Influence the Toxicity of Mineral Fibers and Other EMPs	72
2.2.2.1 Short-Term Animal Studies.....	73
2.2.2.2 Long-Term Animal Studies.....	74
2.3 Develop Information and Knowledge on Occupational Exposures to Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs and Related Health Outcomes.....	75
2.3.1 Assess Available Information On Occupational Exposures to Various Types of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	76
2.3.2 Collect and Analyze Available Information on Health Outcomes Associated with Exposures to Various Types of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	77
2.3.3 Conduct Selective Epidemiological Studies of Workers Exposed to Various Types of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs and Related Health Outcomes.....	78

CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

2.3.4 Improve Clinical Tools and Practices for Screening, Diagnosis, Treatment, and Secondary Prevention of Diseases Caused by asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	80
2.4 Develop Improved Sampling and Analytical Methods for Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	82
2.4.1 Reduce Inter-operator and Inter-laboratory Variability of the Current Analytical Methods Used for Asbestos Fibers.....	83
2.4.2 Develop Analytical Methods with Improved Sensitivity to Visualize Thinner EMPs to Ensure a More Complete Evaluation of Airborne Exposures.....	84
2.4.3 Develop a Practical Analytical Method for Air Samples to Differentiate Between Asbestiform Fibers from the Asbestos Minerals and EMPs from Their Nonasbestiform Analogs	86
2.4.4 Develop Analytical Methods to Assess Durability of EMPs.....	87
2.4.5 Develop and Validate Size Selective Sampling Methods for EMPs.....	87
2.5 How the Proposed Research Framework Could Lead to Improved Public Health Policies for Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs.....	88
3 THE PATH FORWARD.....	92
4 REFERENCES.....	95
5 GLOSSARY.....	126

LIST OF FIGURES

- Figure 1. US Asbestos production and imports, 1991–2007.
- Figure 2. Asbestos: Annual geometric mean exposure concentrations by major industry division, MSHA and OSHA samples, 1979–2003.
- Figure 3. Number of asbestosis deaths, U.S. residents age 15 and over, 1968–2004.
- Figure 4. Number of malignant mesothelioma deaths, U.S. residents age 15 and over, 1999–2004.

Executive Summary

In the 1970s, Federal agencies in the U.S. developed occupational regulatory definitions and standards for exposure to airborne asbestos fibers based on human evidence of respiratory disease observed in exposed workers. Since the promulgation of these standards, which apply to the six commercially used asbestos minerals—chrysotile, and the amphibole minerals cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos (amosite), riebeckite asbestos (crocidolite), actinolite asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, and tremolite asbestos—the use of asbestos in the U.S. has declined substantially and mining of asbestos in the U.S. ceased in 2002. Nevertheless, many asbestos products remain in use and new asbestos-containing products continue to be manufactured in or imported into the U.S.

As more information became available on the relationship between the dimensions of asbestos fibers and their ability to cause respiratory disease and cancer, interest increased in exposure to other “mineral fibers.” The term “mineral fiber” has been frequently used by non-mineralogists to encompass thoracic-size elongated mineral particles (EMPs) that grow either in an asbestiform habit (e.g., asbestos fibers) or a nonasbestiform habit (e.g., as needle-like [acicular] or prismatic crystals), as well as EMPs that result from the crushing or fracturing of non-fibrous minerals (e.g., cleavage fragments). EMPs that grow in asbestiform habits are clearly of health concern. It remains uncertain whether other thoracic-size EMPs with mineralogical compositions similar to the asbestiform minerals warrant similar health concern.

In 1990, NIOSH revised its recommendation concerning occupational exposure to airborne asbestos fibers. At issue were concerns about potential health risks associated with worker exposures to EMPs with mineralogical compositions similar to those of the asbestos minerals and the inability of the analytical method routinely used for airborne fibers (i.e., phase contrast microscopy [PCM]) to differentiate between these other EMPs and fibers from the asbestos minerals. To address this concern, NIOSH defined “airborne asbestos fibers” to encompass not only fibers from the six previously listed asbestos minerals (chrysotile, crocidolite, amosite, anthophyllite asbestos, tremolite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos), but also EMPs from their nonasbestiform analogs. NIOSH retained the use of PCM for measuring airborne fiber concentrations and counting those EMPs having: (1) an aspect ratio of 3:1 or greater; and (2) a length greater than 5 μm . NIOSH also retained its recommended exposure limit (REL) of 0.1 “airborne asbestos fibers” per cubic centimeter (f/cm^3).

Since 1990, several persistent concerns have been raised about the revised NIOSH recommendation. These concerns include:

- NIOSH’s explicit inclusion of EMPs from nonasbestiform amphiboles in its 1990 revised definition of “airborne asbestos fibers” is based on inconclusive science

and contrasts with the regulatory approach subsequently taken by OSHA and by MSHA.

- The revised “airborne asbestos fibers” definition does not explicitly encompass EMPs from other asbestiform amphiboles (e.g., winchite and richterite) or other fibrous minerals (e.g., erionite) that have been associated with health effects similar to those caused by asbestos.
- The specified dimensional criteria (length and aspect ratio) for EMPs covered by the revised “airborne asbestos fibers” definition is not based solely on health concerns and may not be optimal for protecting the health of exposed workers.
- Other physicochemical parameters, such as durability and surface activity, may be important toxicological parameters but are not reflected in the revised definition of “airborne asbestos fibers”.
- NIOSH’s use of the term “airborne asbestos fibers” to describe all airborne EMPs covered by the REL differs from the way mineralogists use the term and this inconsistency leads to confusion about the toxicity of EMPs.

NIOSH recognizes that its descriptions of the REL for airborne asbestos fibers as revised in 1990 have created confusion causing many to infer that the additional nonasbestiform covered minerals included in the NIOSH definition are “asbestos.” NIOSH wishes to make clear that such nonasbestiform minerals are not “asbestos” or “asbestos minerals.” NIOSH also wishes to minimize any potential future confusion by no longer defining EMPs from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals as “asbestos fibers.” In a clarified REL presented in Section 1.8 of this *Roadmap*, NIOSH avoids referring to EMPs from nonasbestiform minerals as “asbestos fibers,” but such particles meeting the specified dimensional criteria remain countable under the existing REL. The clarified wording of the existing NIOSH REL is included in this document only for the purpose of providing a better understanding of the basis for the proposed research. It is not intended to establish or revise existing NIOSH occupational health policy relating to asbestos, and no regulatory response by OSHA or MSHA is requested or expected.

PCM is the primary method specified by NIOSH, OSHA, and MSHA for analysis of air samples for asbestos fibers, but it has several limitations, including limited ability to resolve very thin fibers and to differentiate various types of EMPs. Occupational exposure limits derived from human risk assessments have been based on airborne asbestos fiber concentrations determined directly using PCM, or on conversions to estimated PCM-based fiber concentrations from older impinger-based particle count concentrations. Current risk estimates for airborne asbestos fiber exposure are based on methods that count only the subset of airborne fibers. The standard procedure for

determining fiber concentrations using PCM counts only fibers longer than 5 μm . But some fibers longer than 5 μm are too thin to be detected by PCM. Thus, this analytical method leaves an undetermined number of fibers collected on each sample uncounted. More sensitive analytical methods are currently available, but standardization and validation of these methods will be required before they can be recommended for routine analysis. In addition, any substantive change in analytical techniques used to evaluate samples and/or the criteria for determining exposure concentrations will necessitate a reassessment of current risk estimates, which are based on PCM-derived fiber concentrations.

While epidemiological evidence clearly indicates a causal relationship between exposure to fibers from the asbestos minerals and various adverse health outcomes, including asbestosis, lung cancer, and mesothelioma, results from epidemiological studies do not provide entirely clear answers regarding potential toxicity of EMPs from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals. Due to various study limitations, NIOSH has viewed findings from relevant epidemiological studies as providing inconclusive, as opposed to either positive or negative, evidence regarding health hazards associated with exposures to EMPs from nonasbestiform amphiboles. Populations of special interest include workers at talc mines in upstate New York and workers at taconite mines in northeastern Minnesota, whose exposures are to predominantly nonasbestiform EMPs. Additional epidemiological studies are also warranted on other EMPs that have not been as well studied as fibers from the six asbestos varieties used commercially, such as winchite and richterite fibers (i.e., asbestiform EMPs identified in vermiculite from a former mine near Libby, Montana) and zeolite fibers, among others.

Although additional opportunities for informative observational epidemiological studies may be somewhat limited, there is considerable potential for experimental animal studies and *in vitro* studies to address specific scientific questions relating to the toxicity of EMPs. Short-term *in vivo* animal studies and *in vitro* studies have been conducted to variously examine cellular and tissue responses to EMPs, identify pathogenic mechanisms involved in those responses, and understand morphological and/or physicochemical EMP properties controlling those mechanisms. Long-term studies of animals exposed to EMPs have been conducted to assess the risk for adverse health outcomes (primarily lung cancer, mesothelioma, and lung fibrosis) associated with various types and dimensions of EMPs. Such studies have produced evidence demonstrating the importance of dimensional characteristics of mineral particles for determining carcinogenic potential of durable EMPs. In fact, NIOSH's policy decision in 1990 to include the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals as covered minerals under its definition of "airborne asbestos fibers" was largely based on evidence from these long-term animal studies. Although *in vitro* studies (which do not incorporate all *in vivo* conditions and processes) and animal studies (for which interspecies differences have been observed) are subject to uncertainties with respect to how their findings apply to humans, animal studies are warranted to systematically study and better understand the

impacts of dimension, morphology, chemistry, and biopersistence of EMPs on malignant and nonmalignant respiratory disease outcomes.

To reduce existing scientific uncertainties and to help resolve current policy controversies, strategic research endeavors are needed in toxicology, exposure assessment, epidemiology, and analytical methods. The findings of such research will contribute to the development of new policies concerning exposures to airborne asbestos fibers and other EMPs with recommendations for exposure indices that are not only more effective in protecting workers' health, but are firmly based on quantitative risk estimates. To bridge existing scientific uncertainties, this *Roadmap* proposes that research address the following three strategic goals: (1) develop a broader and clearer understanding of the important determinants of toxicity for EMPs; (2) develop information on occupational exposures to various EMPs and health risks associated with such exposures; and (3) develop improved sampling and analytical methods for asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

Developing a broader and clearer understanding of the important determinants of toxicity for EMPs will involve conducting *in vitro* studies and *in vivo* animal studies to ascertain what physical and chemical properties of EMPs influence their toxicity.

Developing information and knowledge on occupational exposures to various EMPs and potential health outcomes will involve: (1) collecting and analyzing available occupational exposure information to ascertain the characteristics and extent of exposure to various types of EMPs; (2) collecting and analyzing available information on health outcomes associated with exposures to various types of EMPs; (3) conducting epidemiological studies of workers exposed to various types of EMPs to better define the association between exposure and health effects for each type, where scientifically warranted and technically feasible; and (4) developing and validating methods for screening, diagnosis, and secondary prevention for diseases caused by exposure to asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

Developing improved sampling and analytical methods for EMPs will involve: (1) reducing inter-operator and inter-laboratory variability of currently used analytical methods; (2) developing a practical analytical method that will permit the counting, sizing, and identification of all EMPs deemed biologically relevant; (3) developing a practical analytical method that can assess the potential durability of EMPs as one determinant of biopersistence in the lung; and (4) developing and validating size-selective sampling methods for collecting and quantifying airborne thoracic-size asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

A primary anticipated outcome of the research would be the identification of the physicochemical parameters such as chemical composition, dimensional attributes (e.g., ranges of length, width, and aspect ratio), and durability as predictors of biopersistence,

as well as particle surface characteristics or activities (e.g., generation reactive oxygen species [ROS]) that determine the toxicity of asbestos fibers and other EMPs. The results of the research would also provide sampling and analytical methods that closely measure the important toxic characteristics. These results can then inform the development of appropriate recommendations for worker protection.

Another outcome of the research might be the development of criteria that could be used to reliably predict the relative potential risk associated with exposure to any particular type of EMP based on results of *in vitro* testing and/or short-term *in vivo* testing. Such criteria might include specific chemical compositions, dimensional attributes (e.g., ranges of length, width, and aspect ratio), and durability as predictors of biopersistence, as well as particle surface characteristics or activities. This could reduce the need for comprehensive toxicity testing with long-term *in vivo* animal studies and/or epidemiological evaluation of each type of EMP. The results from such studies could possibly be extended beyond EMPs to encompass predictions of relative toxicities and adverse health outcomes associated with exposure to other elongated particles (EPs), including inorganic and organic manufactured particles. A coherent risk management approach that fully incorporates an understanding of the toxicity of particles could then be developed to minimize the potential for disease in exposed individuals and populations. Whether criteria can be developed to evaluate the potential toxicity of EMPs based on simple *in vitro* or short-term *in vivo* testing is currently unclear, but the challenge to work toward such an outcome could stimulate beneficial research and debate.

Asbestos Fibers and Other Elongated Mineral Particles: State of the Science and Roadmap for Scientific Research is intended to define the scientific and technical research issues that need to be addressed to ensure that workers are optimally protected from health risks posed by exposures to asbestos fibers and other EMPs. Achievement of the research goals framed in the *Roadmap* will require a significant investment of time, scientific talent, and resources by NIOSH and others. This investment, however, can result in a sound scientific basis for better occupational health protection policies for asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

Acknowledgements

Cover Photograph: Anthophyllite asbestos altering to talc, upstate New York.
Photograph courtesy of USGS.

NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group

Paul Baron, PhD
John Breslin, PhD
Robert Castellan, MD, MPH
Vincent Castranova, PhD
Joseph Fernback, BS
Frank Hearl, SMChE
Martin Harper, PhD

Jeffrey Kohler, PhD
Paul Middendorf, PhD, Chair
Teresa Schnorr, PhD
Paul Schulte, PhD
Patricia Sullivan, ScD
David Weissman, MD
Ralph Zumwalde, MS

This document was prepared by the NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group and other members of the NIOSH staff. Paul Middendorf, Ralph Zumwalde, and Robert Castellan contributed to the entire document, as did William Wallace, who passed away before it was completed. Others who contributed specific sections are: Martin Harper; Leslie Stayner; Frank Hearl; and Vincent Castranova. Many internal NIOSH reviewers also provided critical feedback important to the preparation of the *Roadmap*.

The NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group acknowledges the leadership and contributions of John Howard, former Director of NIOSH, who commissioned this document and provided direction and conceptual input.

The NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group acknowledges the contributions of Jimmy Stephens, PhD, who initiated NIOSH's work on this document and articulated many of its most critical issues in an early draft.

The NIOSH Mineral Fibers Work Group also acknowledges the contributions of Gregory Meeker, USGS, who participated in discussions of the pertinent mineralogy and mineralogical nomenclature.

NIOSH greatly appreciates the time and efforts of expert peer reviewers and public commenters who provided comments and suggestions on the initial publicly disseminated draft of this *Roadmap*, and public comments on the revised publicly disseminated draft of this *Roadmap*. Their input has been reviewed, considered, and addressed as appropriate to develop this draft of the *Roadmap*.

Peer Reviewers

William Eschenbacher, MD
Group Health Associates

L. Christine Oliver, MD, MPH
Harvard School of Medicine

Morton Lippmann, PhD
New York University

William N. Rom, MD, MPH
New York University

David Michaels, PhD, MPH
George Washington University

Brad Van Gosen, MS
US Geological Survey

Franklin Mirer, PhD
Hunter College

Ann Wylie, PhD
University of Maryland

Brooke Mossman, PhD
University of Vermont

Abbreviations

8-OHdG	8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine
AED	aerodynamic equivalent diameter
AIHA	American Industrial Hygiene Association
AP-1	activator protein-1
ASTM	ASTM International
ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances Disease Registry
CI	confidence interval
COX-2	cyclooxygenase-2
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
DM	dark-medium microscopy
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DPPC	dipalmitoyl phosphatidylcholine
ED	electron diffraction
EDS	energy dispersive X-ray spectroscopy
EGFR	epidermal growth factor receptor
EM	electron microscopy
EMP	elongated mineral particle
EP	elongated particle
EPA	US Environmental Protection Agency
ERK	extracellular signal-regulated kinase
f/cm ³	fibers per cubic centimeter
f/mL-yr	fibers per milliliter-year
ICD	International Classification of Diseases
IgG	immunoglobulin G
IMA	International Mineralogical Association
IMIS	Integrated Management Information System
IP	intraperitoneal
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LOQ	limit of quantification
MDH	Minnesota Department of Health
mg/m ³ -d	milligrams per cubic meter-days
MAPK	mitogen-activated protein kinase
MMAD	mass median aerodynamic diameter
MMMF	man-made mineral fiber
MMVF	man-made vitreous fiber
mppcf	million particles per cubic foot
MSHA	Mine Safety and Health Administration
NADPH	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate
NF-κB	nuclear factor kappa beta

Abbreviations (continued)

NMRD	nonmalignant respiratory disease
NIEHS	National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences
NIOSH	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NORA	National Occupational Research Agenda
NORMS	National Occupational Respiratory Mortality System
NTP	National Toxicology Program
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PCM	phase contrast microscopy
PEL	permissible exposure limit
RCF	refractory ceramic fiber
REL	recommended exposure limit
ROS	reactive oxygen species
RTV	RT Vanderbilt Company, Inc.
SEM	scanning electron microscopy
SO	superoxide anion
SOD	superoxide dismutase
SMR	standardized mortality ratio
SV40	simian virus 40
SVF	synthetic vitreous fiber
TEM	transmission electron microscopy
TF	tissue factor
TNF- α	tumor necrosis factor-alpha
TWA	time-weighted average
USGS	United States Geological Survey
XPS	X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy

1 REVIEW OF CURRENT ISSUES

1.1 Introduction

Prior to the 1970s, concern about the health effects of exposure to airborne fibers was focused on six commercially exploited minerals termed “asbestos:” the serpentine mineral chrysotile and the amphibole minerals cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos (amosite), riebeckite asbestos (crocidolite), actinolite asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, and tremolite asbestos. The realization that dimensional characteristics of asbestos fibers were important physical parameters in the initiation of respiratory disease broadened interest to man-made fibers (e.g., synthetic vitreous fibers [SVFs]) and to other elongated mineral particles (EMPs) of similar dimensions [Stanton et al. 1981].

To date, interest in EMPs other than asbestos fibers has been focused primarily on fibrous minerals exploited commercially (e.g., wollastonite, sepiolite, and attapulgite). Exposure to airborne thoracic-size EMPs generated from the crushing and fracturing of nonasbestiform amphibole minerals has also garnered substantial interest. Some of the asbestos minerals, as well as other types of fibrous minerals, are frequently associated with other minerals in geologic formations at various locations in the United States [Van Gosen 2007]. The biological significance of occupational exposure to airborne particles remains unknown for many of these minerals and will be difficult to ascertain given the mixed and sporadic nature of exposure in many work environments and the general lack of well-characterized exposure information.

The complex and evolving terminology used to name and describe the various minerals from which airborne EMPs are generated has led to much confusion and uncertainty in scientific and lay discourse related to asbestos fibers and other EMPs. To help minimize such confusion and uncertainty about the content of this *Roadmap*, key terms are defined in the Glossary (Section 5).

To address current controversies and uncertainties concerning exposure assessment and health effects relating to asbestos fibers and other EMPs, strategic research endeavors are needed in toxicology, exposure assessment, epidemiology, and analytical methods. The results of such research can inform the potential development of new policies for asbestos fibers and other EMPs with recommendations for exposure limits that are firmly based on well-established risk estimates and that effectively protect workers’ health. What follows in the remainder of Section 1 is an overview of: definitions and terms relevant to asbestos fibers and other EMPs; trends in production/use of asbestos, in occupational exposures to asbestos, and in asbestos-related diseases; sampling and analytical issues; and physicochemical properties associated with EMP toxicity.

1.2 Minerals and Mineral Morphology

Minerals are naturally occurring inorganic compounds with a specific crystalline structure and elemental composition. They are defined by their distinctive structure and elemental composition. Asbestos is a term applied to several silicate minerals from the serpentine and amphibole groups that grow in a fibrous habit and have properties that have made them commercially valuable. The fibers of all varieties of asbestos are long, thin, and usually flexible when separated. One variety of asbestos, chrysotile, is a mineral in the serpentine group of sheet silicates. Five varieties of asbestos are minerals in the amphibole group of double chain silicates—riebeckite asbestos (crocidolite), cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos (amosite), anthophyllite asbestos, tremolite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos.

Although a large amount of health information has been generated on workers occupationally exposed to asbestos, limited mineral characterization, use of non-mineralogical names for asbestos, and changing mineralogical nomenclature have resulted in uncertainty and confusion about the specific nature of exposures in many published studies. Over the past 50 years, several systems for naming amphibole minerals have been used. The current mineralogical nomenclature was unified by the International Mineralogical Association (IMA) under a single system in 1978 [Leake 1978] and later modified in 1997 [Leake et al. 1997]. For some amphibole minerals, the name assigned under the 1997 IMA system is different than the name used prior to 1978. In addition, common or commercial names have often been used instead of mineralogical nomenclature. The lack of consistency in nomenclature for asbestos and related minerals has contributed to frequent uncertainty in the specific identification of minerals reported on in the literature.

Trade names for mined asbestos minerals predated the development of rigorous scientific nomenclature. For example, amosite is the trade name for asbestiform cummingtonite-grunerite and crocidolite is the trade name for asbestiform riebeckite. Adding to the complexity of the nomenclature, serpentine and amphibole minerals typically develop through the alteration of other minerals. Consequently, they may exist as partially altered minerals having variations in elemental compositions. For example, the microscopic analysis of an elongated amphibole particle using energy dispersive X-ray spectroscopy (EDS) can reveal variations in elemental composition along the particle's length, making it difficult to identify the particle as a single specific amphibole mineral. In addition, a mineral may occur in different growth forms, or "habits," both sharing the same name, elemental composition, and chemical structure.

Mineral habit results from the environmental conditions present during a mineral's formation. The mineralogical terms applied to habits are generally descriptive (e.g., fibrous, massive, prismatic, acicular, asbestiform, tabular, and platy). Both asbestiform (fibrous) and nonasbestiform (massive) versions (i.e., analogs) of the same mineral can

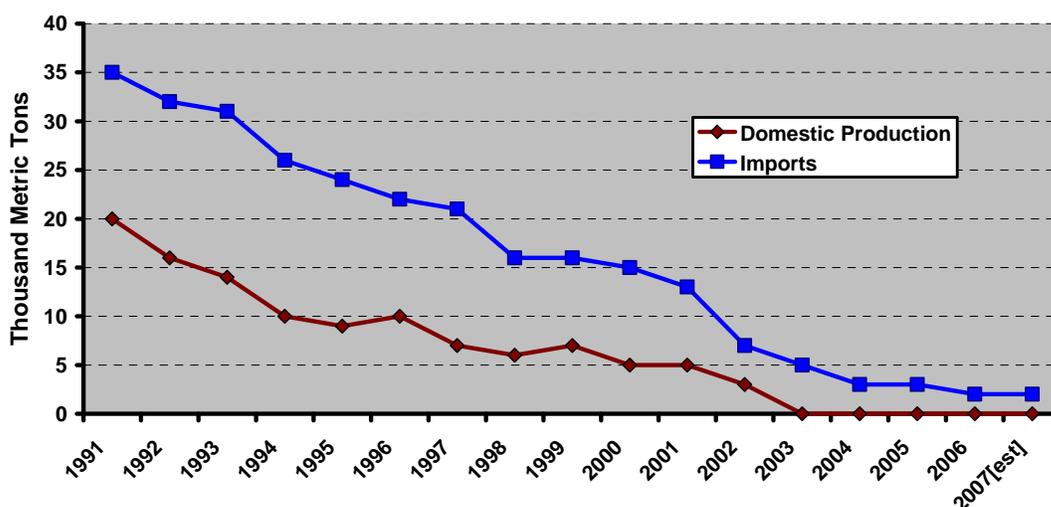
1 occur in juxtaposition or matrixed together, so that both analogs of the same mineral can
2 occur within a narrow geological formation.

3
4 In the scientific literature, the term “mineral fibers” has often been used to refer not only
5 to particles that have grown in a fibrous or asbestiform habit, but also to particles that
6 have grown as needle-like (acicular) single crystals. The term “mineral fibers” has
7 sometimes also encompassed other prismatic crystals and cleavage fragments that meet
8 specified dimensional criteria. Cleavage fragments are generated by crushing and
9 fracturing minerals, including the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals.
10 While the hazards of inhalational exposure to airborne asbestos fibers have been well
11 documented, there is controversy about whether exposure to thoracic-size EMPs from
12 nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals is similarly hazardous.

13 14 **1.3 Trends in Asbestos Use, Occupational Exposures, and Disease**

15 16 *1.3.1 Trends in Asbestos Use*

17
18 Over recent decades mining and use of asbestos have declined in the U.S. The mining of
19 asbestos in the U.S. ceased in 2002. Consumption of raw asbestos continues to decline
20 from a peak of 803,000 metric tons in 1973 [USGS 2006]. In 2006, 2000 metric tons of
21 raw asbestos were imported, down from an estimated 35,000 metric tons in 1991 (see
22 Figure 1) and a peak of 718,000 metric tons in 1973. Unlike information on the
23 importation of raw asbestos, information is not readily available on the importation of
24 asbestos-containing products. The primary recent uses for asbestos materials in the U.S.
25 are estimated as 55% for roofing products, 26% for coatings and compounds, and 19%
26 for other applications [USGS 2007], and more recently as 84% for roofing products and
27 16% for other applications [USGS 2008].



28
29 **Figure 1.** US asbestos production and imports, 1991–2007. Source of data: USGS [2008].

1 Worldwide, the use of asbestos has declined. Using the amount of asbestos mined as a
2 surrogate for the amount used, worldwide use has declined from about 5 million metric
3 tons in 1975 to about 2 million metric tons annually since 1999 [Taylor et al. 2006]. The
4 European Union has banned imports and the use of asbestos with limited exceptions. In
5 other regions of the world, there is a continued demand for inexpensive, durable
6 construction materials. Consequently, markets remain strong in some countries for
7 asbestos-cement products, such as asbestos-cement panels for construction of buildings
8 and asbestos-cement pipe for water-supply lines. Currently over 70% of all mined
9 asbestos is used in Eastern Europe and Asia [Tossavainen 2005].

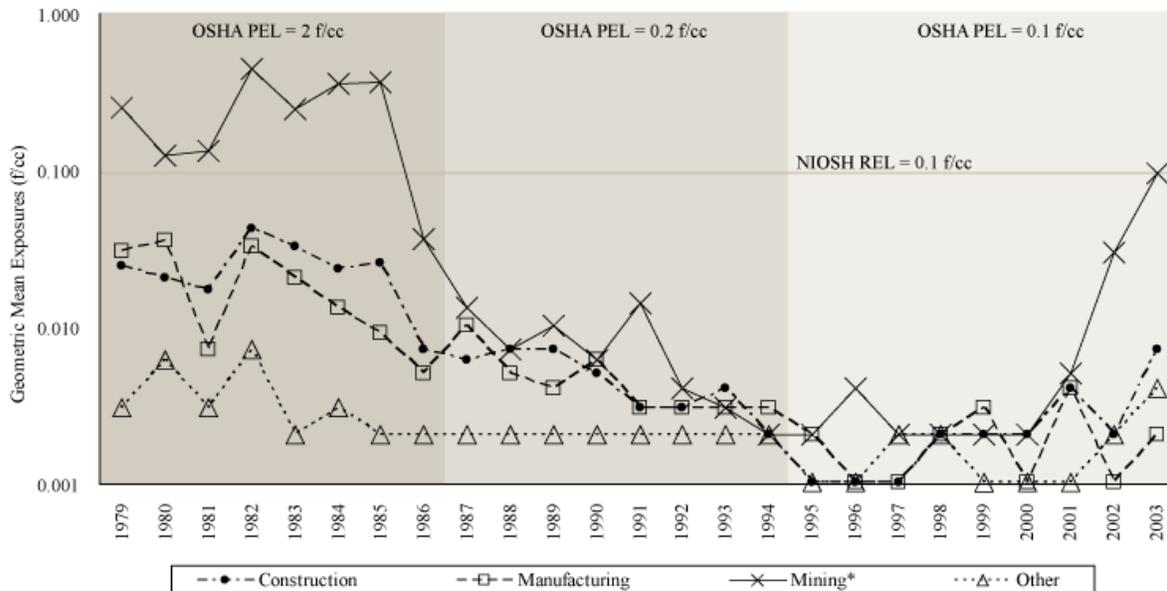
10
11 Historically, chrysotile accounted for more than 90% of the world's mined asbestos; it
12 presently accounts for over 99% [Ross and Virta 2001; USGS 2008]. Mining of
13 crocidolite (asbestiform riebeckite) and amosite (asbestiform cummingtonite-grunerite)
14 deposits have accounted for most of the remaining asbestos, although mining of amosite
15 ceased in 1992 and mining of crocidolite ended in 1997. Small amounts of anthophyllite
16 asbestos have been mined in Finland [Ross and Virta 2001] and are currently being
17 mined in India [Ansari et al. 2007].

18 19 20 **1.3.2 Trends in Occupational Exposure**

21
22 Since 1986, the annual geometric mean concentrations of occupational exposures to
23 asbestos in the U.S., as reported in the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's
24 (OSHA) Integrated Management Information System (IMIS) and the Mine Safety and
25 Health Administration's (MSHA) database, have been consistently below the NIOSH
26 recommended exposure limit (REL) of 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (f/cm³) for
27 all major industry divisions (Figure 2). The number of occupational asbestos exposures
28 that were measured and reported in IMIS decreased from an average of 890 per year
29 during the 8-year period of 1987–1994 to 241 per year during the 5-year period of 1995–
30 1999, and 135 for the 4 year period of 2000–2003. The percentage exceeding the NIOSH
31 REL decreased from 6.3% in 1987–1994 to 0.9% in 1995–1999, but increased to 4.3% in
32 2000–2003. During the same three periods, the number of exposures measured and
33 reported in MSHA's database decreased from an average of 47 per year during 1987–
34 1994 to an average of 23 per year during 1995–1999, but increased to 84 during 2000–
35 2003, most of which were collected in 2000. The percentage exceeding the NIOSH REL
36 decreased from 11.1% in 1987–1994 to 2.6% in 1995–1999, but increased to 9.8% in
37 2000–2003 [NIOSH 2007a].

38
39 The preceding summary of occupational exposures to asbestos is based on the OSHA and
40 MSHA regulatory definitions relating to asbestos. Because of analytical limitations of
41 the phase contrast microscopy (PCM) method and the variety of workplaces from which
42 the data were obtained, it is unclear what portions of these exposures were to EMPs from
43 nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals, which have been encompassed by the
44 NIOSH REL for airborne asbestos fibers since 1990.

1



2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

Figure 2. Asbestos: Annual geometric mean exposure concentrations by major industry division, MSHA and OSHA samples, 1979–2003. Source of data: NIOSH [2007a]. Note: MSHA PEL for this time period was 2 f/cm³.

Very limited information is available on the number of workers still exposed to asbestos. Based on MSHA [2002] mine employment data, an estimated 44,000 miners and other mine workers may be exposed to asbestos during the mining of some mineral commodities in which asbestos may be a potential contaminant [NIOSH 2002]. OSHA estimated in 1990 that about 568,000 workers in production and services industries and 114,000 in construction industries may be exposed to asbestos in the workplace [OSHA 1990]. More recently, OSHA has estimated that 1.3 million employees in construction and general industry face significant asbestos exposure on the job [OSHA 2008].

In addition to evidence from OSHA and MSHA that indicate a reduction in occupational exposures in the U.S. over the past several decades, other information compiled on workplace exposures to asbestos indicates that the nature of occupational exposures to asbestos has changed [Rice and Heineman 2003]. Once dominated by chronic exposures in manufacturing process such as those used in textile mills, friction product manufacturing, and cement pipe fabrication, current occupational exposures to asbestos in the U.S. primarily occur during maintenance activities or remediation of buildings containing asbestos. These current occupational exposure scenarios frequently involve short-term, intermittent exposures.

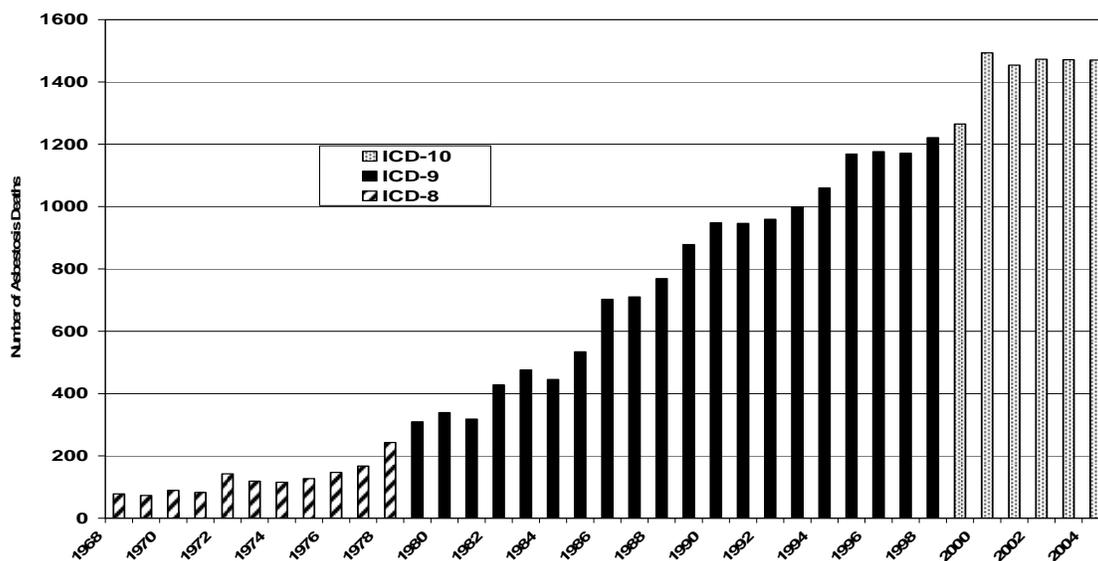
1 **1.3.3 Trends in Asbestos-related Disease**

2
3 Epidemiological studies of workers occupationally exposed to asbestos have clearly
4 documented the increased risk of several respiratory diseases, including lung cancer,
5 mesothelioma, diffuse fibrosis of the lung, and non-malignant pleural abnormalities
6 including acute pleuritis and chronic diffuse and localized thickening of the pleura. In
7 addition, it has been determined that laryngeal cancer can be caused by exposure to
8 asbestos [IOM 2006] and evidence suggests that asbestos may also cause other diseases
9 (e.g., pharyngeal, stomach, and colorectal cancers [IOM 2006] and immune disorders
10 [ATSDR 2001].

11
12 National surveillance data, showing trends over time, are available for two diseases with
13 rather specific mineral fiber etiologies—asbestosis and malignant mesothelioma (see
14 following sub-sections). Lung cancer is known to be caused in part by asbestos fiber
15 exposure, but has multiple etiologies. Ongoing national surveillance for lung cancer
16 caused by asbestos exposure has not been done. However, using various assumptions
17 and methods, several researchers have projected the number of U.S. lung cancer deaths
18 caused by asbestos. Examples of the projected number of asbestos-caused lung cancer
19 deaths in the U.S. include 55,100 [Walker et al. 1983] and 76,700 [Lilienfeld et al. 1988],
20 each of these projections representing the 30-year period from 1980 through 2009.
21 However, in the absence of specific diagnostic criteria and a specific disease code for the
22 subset of lung cancers caused by asbestos, ongoing surveillance cannot be done for lung
23 cancer caused by asbestos.

24
25
26 **1.3.3.1 Asbestosis**

27
28 NIOSH has annually tracked U.S. asbestosis deaths since 1968 and malignant
29 mesothelioma deaths since 1999 using death certificate data in the National Occupational
30 Respiratory Mortality System (NORMS). NORMS data, representing all deaths among
31 U.S. residents, show that asbestosis deaths increased almost 20-fold from the late 1960s
32 to the late 1990s (Figure 6) [NIOSH 2007b]. Trends in asbestosis mortality is expected
33 to substantially trail trends in asbestos exposures (see Section 1.3.2) for two primary
34 reasons: (1) the latency period between asbestos exposure and asbestosis onset is
35 typically long, commonly one or two decades or more; and (2) asbestosis is a chronic
36 disease, so affected individuals can live for many years with the disease before
37 succumbing. In fact, asbestosis deaths have apparently plateaued (at nearly 1,500 per
38 year) since 2000 (Figure 3) [NIOSH 2007b]. Ultimately, it is anticipated that the annual
39 number of asbestosis deaths in the U.S. will decrease substantially as a result of
40 documented reductions in exposure. However, asbestos usage has not been completely
41 eliminated, and asbestos-containing materials remain in place in structural materials and
42 machinery, so the potential for exposure remains. Thus, asbestosis deaths in the U.S. are
43 anticipated to continue to occur for several decades.



1
2 **Figure 3.** Number of asbestosis deaths, U.S. residents age 15 and over, 1968–2004. Source of
3 data: NIOSH [2007b].
4
5

6 1.3.3.2 Malignant Mesothelioma

7
8 Malignant mesothelioma, an aggressive disease that is nearly always fatal, is known to be
9 caused by exposure to asbestos and some other mineral fibers [IOM 2006]. The
10 occurrence of mesothelioma has been strongly linked with occupational exposures to
11 asbestos [Bang et al. 2006]. There had been no discrete International Classification of
12 Disease (ICD) code for mesothelioma until its most recent 10th revision. Thus, only 6
13 years of NORMS data are available with a specific ICD code for mesothelioma (Figure
14 4); during this period, there was a 7% increase in annual mesothelioma deaths, from
15 2,484 in 1999 to 2,657 in 2004 [NIOSH 2007b]. A later peak for mesothelioma deaths
16 than for asbestosis deaths would be entirely expected, given the longer latency for
17 mesothelioma [Järholm et al. 1999]. One analysis of malignant mesothelioma incidence
18 based on the National Cancer Institute's Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results
19 (SEER) Program data found that an earlier steep increase in incidence had moderated and
20 that mesothelioma incidence may have actually peaked sometime in the 1990s in SEER-
21 covered areas [Weill et al. 2004]. In contrast to NORMS data, which represents a census
22 of all deaths in the entire U.S., the analyzed SEER data was from areas in which reside a
23 total of only about 15% of the U.S. population.

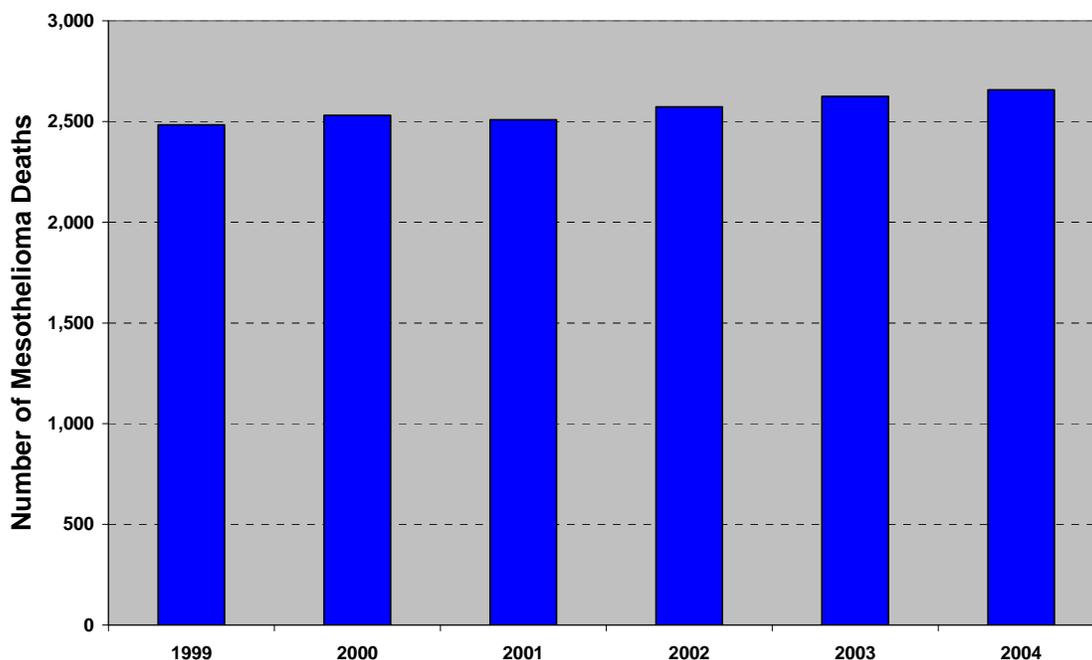


Figure 4. Number of malignant mesothelioma deaths, U.S. residents age 15 and over, 1999–2004. Source of data: NIOSH [2007b].

1.4 Clinical Issues

A thorough review of how asbestos-related diseases are diagnosed is beyond the scope of this document, and authoritative guidance on the diagnosis and attribution of asbestos-caused diseases has been published elsewhere [Anonymous 1997; British Thoracic Society Standards of Care Committee 2001; Henderson et al. 2004; ATS 2004].

The diagnosis of asbestos-caused malignancies (e.g., lung cancer and malignant mesothelioma) is almost always based on characteristic histology (or abnormal cytology in some cases). Despite research on other possible etiologies, genetic susceptibilities, and hypothesized co-factors such as simian virus 40, it is generally accepted that most cases of malignant mesothelioma are caused by exposure to asbestos or other mineral (e.g., erionite) fibers [Robinson and Lake 2005; Carbone and Bedrossian 2006]. Of particular concern to patients diagnosed with malignant mesothelioma, as well as to individuals who remain at-risk due to past exposures, the disease currently is essentially incurable [British Thoracic Society Standards of Care Committee 2001]. Diagnosis may be relatively straightforward, but can be difficult due to a challenging differential diagnosis [Lee et al. 2002]. Advances have been made to improve diagnostic testing for malignant

1 mesothelioma using immunochemical markers and other more sophisticated
2 histopathological analyses, and additional research is aimed at improving treatment of the
3 disease [Robinson and Lake 2005]. Notable recent research efforts have been directed
4 towards the development of biomarkers for mesothelioma that can be assessed by
5 noninvasive means. A long-term goal of the biomarker research is to enable screening of
6 high-risk individuals with sufficiently sensitive and specific non-invasive biomarkers to
7 identify disease at an early stage when therapeutic intervention might have a greater
8 potential to slow the progression of the disease or to be curative. Other goals are to use
9 non-invasive biomarkers for monitoring the disease in patients treated for mesothelioma
10 and even for diagnosing the disease. Non-invasive biomarkers, including osteopontin
11 and soluble mesothelin-related peptide, have been and continue to be evaluated, but none
12 are considered ready for routine clinical application [Cullen 2005; Scherpereel and Lee
13 2007].
14

15 Non-malignant asbestos-related diseases are diagnosed by considering three major
16 necessary criteria: (1) evidence of structural change consistent with asbestos-caused
17 effect (e.g., abnormality on chest image; and/or tissue histology); (2) evidence of
18 exposure to asbestos (e.g., history of occupational or environmental exposure with
19 appropriate latency; and/or asbestos bodies identified in lung tissue, sputum, or
20 bronchoalveolar lavage; and/or other concurrent marker of asbestos exposure such as
21 pleural plaques); and (3) exclusion of alternative diagnoses [ATS 2004]. The specificity
22 of an asbestosis diagnosis increases as the number of consistent clinical abnormalities
23 increases [ATS 2004]. In practice, only a small proportion of cases are diagnosed on the
24 basis of lung biopsy and tissue histopathology, as lung biopsy is an invasive procedure
25 with inherent risks for the patient. Thus, following reasonable efforts to exclude other
26 possible diagnoses, the diagnosis of asbestosis usually rests on chest imaging
27 abnormalities that are consistent with asbestosis in an individual judged to have sufficient
28 exposure and latency since first exposure.
29

30 Chest radiography remains the most commonly used imaging method for screening
31 exposed individuals for asbestosis and for evaluating symptomatic patients.
32 Nevertheless, it is important to understand that, as with any screening tool for disease, in
33 screening populations for asbestosis, the predictive value of a positive chest radiograph
34 alone depends upon the underlying prevalence of asbestosis in the screened population
35 [Ross 2003]. A widely accepted system for classifying radiographic abnormalities of the
36 pneumoconioses was initially intended primarily for epidemiological use, but has long
37 been widely used for other purposes (e.g., to determine eligibility for compensation and
38 for medicolegal purposes) [ILO 2002]. A NIOSH-administered “B Reader” Program
39 trains and tests physicians for proficiency in the application of this system [NIOSH
40 2007c]. Certain problems with the use of chest radiography for pneumoconioses have
41 long been recognized [Wagner et al. 1993] and recent abuses have garnered substantial
42 attention [Miller 2007]. In response, NIOSH recently published guidance for B Readers
43 [NIOSH 2007d] and for the use of B Readers and ILO classifications in various settings
44 [NIOSH 2007e].

1
2 In developed countries, conventional film radiography is rapidly giving way to digital
3 radiography, and work is currently underway to develop digital standards and validate
4 their use in classifying digital chest radiographs under the ILO system [Franzblau et al.
5 2006; NIOSH 2008a]. Computerized tomography, and especially high-resolution
6 computed tomography (HRCT), has proven more sensitive and more specific than chest
7 radiography for the diagnosis of asbestosis and is frequently used to help rule out other
8 conditions [DeVuyst and Gevenois 2002]. Standardized systems for classifying
9 pneumoconiotic abnormalities have been proposed for computed tomography, but have
10 not yet been widely adopted [Kraus et al. 1996; Huuskonen et al. 2001].
11

12 In addition to documenting structural tissue changes consistent with asbestos-caused
13 disease, usually assessed radiographically as discussed above, the diagnosis of asbestosis
14 relies on documentation of exposure [ATS 2004]. In clinical practice, exposure is most
15 often ascertained by the diagnosing physician from an occupational and environmental
16 history, assessed with respect to intensity and duration. Such a history enables a
17 judgment about whether the observed clinical abnormalities can be reasonably attributed
18 to past asbestos exposure, recognizing that severity of lung fibrosis is related to dose and
19 latency [ATS 2004]. The presence of characteristic pleural plaques, especially if
20 calcified, can also be used as evidence of past asbestos exposure [ATS 2004]. In a small
21 minority of cases, particularly when the exposure history is uncertain or vague or when
22 additional clinical assessment is required to resolve a challenging differential diagnosis,
23 past asbestos exposure is documented through mineralogical analysis of sputum,
24 bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, or lung tissue. Light microscopy can be used to detect and
25 count asbestos bodies (i.e., asbestos fibers that have become coated with iron-containing
26 hemosiderin during residence in the body and more generically referred to as ferruginous
27 bodies) in clinical samples. Electron microscopy (EM) can be used to detect and count
28 uncoated asbestos fibers in clinical samples. Standards for such clinical mineralogical
29 analyses often vary, valid background levels are difficult to establish, and the absence of
30 asbestos bodies cannot be used to absolutely rule out past exposure, particularly with
31 chrysotile exposure (because chrysotile fibers are known to be less persistent in the lungs
32 than amphibole asbestos fibers) [De Vuyst et al. 1998; ATS 2004].
33
34

35 **1.5 The NIOSH Recommendation for Occupational Exposure to Asbestos**

36
37 Evidence that asbestos causes lung cancer and mesothelioma in humans is well
38 documented [NIOSH 1976; IARC 1977, 1987a,b; EPA 1986; ATSDR 2001; HHS
39 2005a]. After initially setting an REL at 2 asbestos fibers per cubic meter of air (f/cm³)
40 in 1972, NIOSH later reduced its REL to 0.1 f/cm³, measured as an 8-hour time-weighted
41 average (TWA) [NIOSH 1976]¹. This REL was set at the limit of quantification (LOQ)

¹ The averaging time for the REL was later changed to 100 minutes in accordance with NIOSH Analytical Method #7400 [NIOSH 1994a]. This change in sampling time was first noted in comments and testimony

1 for the phase contrast microscopy (PCM) analytical method for a 400-L sample, but risk
2 estimates indicated that exposure at 0.1 f/cm³ throughout a working lifetime would be
3 associated with a residual risk for lung cancer. A risk-free level of exposure to airborne
4 asbestos fibers has not been established.

5
6 In 1990, NIOSH [1990a] revised its REL, retaining the 0.1 f/cm³ limit but explicitly
7 encompassing EMPs from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals:

8 *NIOSH has attempted to incorporate the appropriate mineralogic nomenclature*
9 *in its recommended standard for asbestos and recommends the following to be*
10 *adopted for regulating exposures to asbestos:*

11
12 *The current NIOSH asbestos recommended exposure limit is 100,000 fibers*
13 *greater than 5 micrometers in length per cubic meter of air, as determined in a*
14 *sample collected over any 100-minute period at a flow rate of 4L/min using*
15 *NIOSH Method 7400, or equivalent. In those cases when mixed fiber types occur*
16 *in the same environment, then Method 7400 can be supplemented with electron*
17 *microscopy, using electron diffraction and microchemical analyses to improve*
18 *specificity of the fiber determination. NIOSH Method 7402 ... provides a*
19 *qualitative technique for assisting in the asbestos fiber determinations. Using*
20 *these NIOSH microscopic methods, or equivalent, airborne asbestos fibers are*
21 *defined, by reference, as those particles having (1) an aspect ratio of 3 to 1 or*
22 *greater; and (2) the mineralogic characteristics (that is, the crystal structure and*
23 *elemental composition) of the asbestos minerals and their nonasbestiform*
24 *analogs. The asbestos minerals are defined as chrysotile, crocidolite, amosite*
25 *(cummingtonite-grunerite), anthophyllite, tremolite, and actinolite. In addition,*
26 *airborne cleavage fragments from the nonasbestiform habits of the serpentine*
27 *minerals antigorite and lizardite, and the amphibole minerals contained in the*
28 *series cummingtonite-grunerite, tremolite-ferroactinolite, and glaucophane-*
29 *riebeckite shall also be counted as fibers provided they meet the criteria for a*
30 *fiber when viewed microscopically.*

31
32 The NIOSH REL [NIOSH 2006] is comprised of a policy component, consisting of a
33 statement of agency intent about what minerals should be covered by the REL, and an
34 analytical component, describing the sampling and analytical methods to be used for
35 collecting, characterizing, and quantifying exposure to airborne particles from the
36 covered minerals. Each of these components of the NIOSH REL is discussed in detail in
37 the following subsections.

presented by NIOSH to OSHA [NIOSH 1990a,b], and reaffirmed in comments to MSHA in 2002 with the explanation that the 100-minute averaging time would help “to identify and control sporadic exposures to asbestos and contribute to the overall reduction of exposure throughout the workshift” [NIOSH 2002].

1 ***1.5.1 Minerals Covered by the NIOSH REL***

2
3 The minerals encompassed in the NIOSH REL include those having the crystalline
4 structure and elemental composition of the asbestos varieties (chrysotile, riebeckite
5 asbestos [crocidolite], cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos [amosite], anthophyllite
6 asbestos, tremolite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos). It also includes the nonasbestiform
7 analogs of the asbestiform minerals (the serpentine minerals antigorite and lizardite, and
8 the amphibole minerals contained in the cummingtonite-grunerite mineral series, the
9 tremolite-ferroactinolite mineral series, and the glaucophane-riebeckite mineral series).

10
11 There is wide agreement that fibers from the six regulated asbestos minerals can cause
12 lung cancer and other diseases of the lung. As with most carcinogenic agents, risk
13 increases in proportion to cumulative exposure, and there is a substantial latency period
14 (10-40 years) between the onset of exposure to asbestos and the occurrence of lung
15 cancer. However, in spite of decades of research into the factors that influence the
16 toxicity of asbestos, there remain several areas of continuing debate [Plumlee et al. 2006].
17 For example, a number of epidemiological, toxicological, and pathological studies
18 indicate that amphibole asbestos fibers may be more potent lung carcinogens than
19 chrysotile fibers. This proposed greater potency has been postulated to be a result of
20 slower dissolution (in lung, interstitial, and phagolysosomal fluids) of amphibole asbestos
21 fibers compared to chrysotile fibers. Thus, amphibole asbestos fibers may tend to persist
22 for longer periods in the lungs and other tissues, thereby imparting a greater potential to
23 trigger lung cancer. A related issue that continues to be debated is the potential for
24 chrysotile fibers to cause mesothelioma and lung cancer, though some cite evidence that
25 suggests that chrysotile fibers do cause mesothelioma (e.g., the presence of chrysotile
26 fibers in mesothelioma tumors and the occurrence of chrysotile without amphibole
27 asbestos in the lung fiber burden of some individuals with cancer or mesothelioma).

28
29 While much is known about the health effects associated with exposure to asbestos fibers,
30 much less information is available about the potential health effects of the other EMPs
31 encompassed in the NIOSH REL for airborne asbestos fibers. Also, limited data are
32 available about what effect exposure to asbestos fibers and other EMPs in a mixed-dust
33 environment might have on the risk of respiratory disease [Plumlee and Ziegler 2006].

34
35
36 ***1.5.1.1 Chrysotile***

37
38 Chrysotile fibers consist of aggregates of long, thin, flexible fibrils that resemble scrolls
39 or cylinders, and the dimensions of individual chrysotile fibers depend on the extent to
40 which the material has been manipulated. Chrysotile fibers split along the fiber length
41 and undergo partial dissolution within the lungs after fibrillation [NRC 1984].
42 Longitudinal splitting of fibers after entering the lung represents one way that air sample
43 PCM counts may underestimate the total dose of fibers in the lung.

1 Epidemiological studies of chrysotile in Quebec mines [McDonald and McDonald 1997]
2 and South Carolina textile mills [Dement et al. 1994; Hein et al. 2007] have produced
3 very different estimates of the risk of cancer associated with exposure to chrysotile fibers.
4 Several reasons for the differences in the lung cancer risks observed in these two different
5 workplaces have been proposed. One suggested explanation is that the chrysotile in the
6 textile mill was contaminated with tremolite asbestos; another is that the textile workers
7 were exposed to mineral oil. However, neither of these explanations has satisfactorily
8 explained the differences [Stayner et al. 1996]. Considering that the workers in textile
9 mills were exposed to fibers considerably longer and thinner than those found in mines
10 [Peto et al. 1982; Dement and Wallingford 1990], a more likely explanation is that the
11 difference in risk may be due, at least in part, to dimensional differences in the particles
12 to which workers were exposed. It has also been proposed that the observed differences
13 between the textile mills and the chrysotile mines is that exposures in the textile mills are
14 almost exclusively to chrysotile asbestos while the exposures in the mines are to a
15 mixture of chrysotile asbestos and related nonasbestiform minerals (Wylie and Bailey
16 1992). Stayner et al. [1997] also point out, in comparing a number of epidemiological
17 studies, that the variation in relative risk for lung cancer is often greater within an
18 industry than between varieties of asbestos.

19
20 Some have argued that pure chrysotile may not be carcinogenic and that increased
21 respiratory cancer among chrysotile workers can be explained by the presence of
22 tremolite asbestos which is often found as a contaminant with chrysotile [McDonald and
23 McDonald 1997]. This is referred to as the “amphibole hypothesis.” However, several
24 studies of workers using chrysotile with very little contamination by tremolite have
25 demonstrated strong relationships between exposure to chrysotile and lung cancer. A
26 study of asbestos workers in China [Yano et al. 2001] found an age- and smoking-
27 adjusted relative risk of 8.1 for lung cancer among highly exposed workers compared to
28 workers with low exposure to asbestos. The identified contamination of the chrysotile by
29 tremolite was less than 0.001%. In the South Carolina textile mill study, a strong
30 relationship between lung cancer and chrysotile exposure has been demonstrated
31 [Dement et al. 1994; Hein et al. 2007]. A recent reanalysis by transmission electron
32 microscopy (TEM) identified only 2 amphibole fibers among 18,840 fiber structures
33 (0.01%) in archived airborne dust samples from that textile mill study; the remainder
34 were identified as chrysotile [Stayner et al. 2007]. Additionally, in lung fiber burden
35 studies of human malignant mesothelioma cases, chrysotile fibers were present in lungs
36 even when amphiboles were not present [Suzuki and Yuen 2001; Suzuki et al. 2005].

37
38 A possible difference in risk for carcinogenicity between chrysotile and amphibole
39 asbestos exposures has been investigated in animal model studies. In a one-year rat
40 inhalation study, chrysotile samples were extremely fibrogenic and carcinogenic, with
41 pulmonary carcinomas developing in approximately 25% of animals and advanced
42 interstitial fibrosis in lung tissue in 10% of all older animals, while intrapleural injection
43 studies produced mesotheliomas in over 90% of animals [Davis et al. 1986]. It was
44 noted that very little chrysotile remained in the lungs of the animals that survived longest

1 following dust inhalation. From this it was suggested that chrysotile is very potent in
2 rodents but, except where exposure levels are very high and of long duration, may be less
3 hazardous to man because it is removed from lung tissue quite rapidly. Hodgson and
4 Darnton [2000] reviewed the literature and estimated that, at exposure levels seen in
5 occupational cohorts, the exposure-specific risk of mesothelioma from the three principal
6 commercial asbestos types is broadly in the ratio 1:100:500 for chrysotile, amosite, and
7 crocidolite, respectively, and the risk differential for lung cancer between chrysotile
8 fibers and the two varieties of amphibole asbestos fibers is between 1:10 and 1:50.

11 *1.5.1.2 Amphibole Asbestos and Other Fibrous Minerals*

13 There is little scientific debate that the asbestiform varieties of the five commercially
14 important amphibole asbestos minerals are carcinogenic and should be covered in
15 regulations to protect workers. However, concerns have been raised about whether the
16 current OSHA and MSHA asbestos definition, which restricts coverage to the asbestiform
17 varieties of the six commercially important asbestos minerals, provides sufficient worker
18 protection from exposure to other fibrous minerals.

20 This concern is exemplified by exposures to winchite and richterite fibers at a vermiculite
21 mine near Libby, Montana, where exposures to these fibers have resulted in high rates
22 of lung fibrosis and cancer among exposed workers, similar to the occurrence of
23 asbestos-related diseases among asbestos-exposed workers in other industries [Amandus
24 and Wheeler 1987; Amandus et al. 1987a,b; McDonald et al. 2004; Sullivan 2007; Rohs
25 et al. 2008]. Workers at the mine and residents of Libby were exposed to fibers identified
26 (as defined using the 1997 IMA amphibole nomenclature) as the asbestiform amphiboles
27 winchite and richterite as well as tremolite asbestos [Meeker et al. 2003].

29 Because winchite and richterite are not explicitly listed among the six commercial
30 asbestos minerals, it is sometimes assumed that they are not included in the regulatory
31 definition for asbestos. However, some of what is now referred to as asbestiform
32 winchite and richterite using the 1997 IMA nomenclature would have been accurately
33 referred to as tremolite asbestos using the 1978 IMA nomenclature [Meeker et al. 2003].
34 Furthermore, an even greater portion of this richterite and winchite would have been
35 identified as tremolite asbestos using the optical methods of identification used prior to
36 1978. In fact, over the years, amphibole minerals from the Libby mine that are now
37 referred to as winchite and richterite have been identified by mineralogists as soda
38 tremolite [Larsen 1942], soda-rich tremolite [Boettcher 1966], and tremolite asbestos and
39 richterite asbestos [Langer et al. 1991; Nolan et al. 1991]; they were similarly identified
40 as tremolite in reports of the Libby mine epidemiological studies conducted by NIOSH in
41 the 1980s [Amandus and Wheeler 1987; Amandus et al. 1987a,b]. In the face of past
42 and future nomenclature changes in the mineralogical sciences, workers need to be
43 protected against exposures to pathogenic asbestiform minerals. The health and
44 regulatory communities will need to carefully define the minerals covered by their

1 policies and monitor the nomenclature changes to minimize the impact of these changes
2 on worker protections.

3
4 Inhalational exposure to other fibrous minerals, such as erionite (a fibrous zeolite), have
5 also been found to cause respiratory diseases similar to those caused by asbestos [HHS
6 2005b]. Thus, while these other fibrous minerals are not included in definitions for
7 asbestos by Federal agencies, the significance of associated health risks warrant concern.
8

9 10 *1.5.1.3 Nonasbestiform Analogs of the Asbestos Varieties*

11
12 The airborne EMPs encompassed by the current NIOSH REL for airborne asbestos fibers
13 explicitly include particles from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals that
14 meet the specified dimensional criteria as determined microscopically.
15

16 *1.5.1.3.1 Rationale for NIOSH Policy*

17
18 The rationale for recommending that nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals be
19 encompassed within the policy definition of airborne asbestos fibers was first articulated
20 in NIOSH comments and testimony to OSHA [NIOSH 1990a,b]. In the 1990 testimony,
21 NIOSH based its recommendation on three elements:
22

- 23 • The first element comprised results of epidemiological studies of worker
24 populations with mixed exposures to asbestos fibers and other EMPs from
25 nonasbestiform mineral analogs of the asbestos minerals or with exposures solely
26 to EMPs (e.g., cleavage fragments) from the nonasbestiform analogs. The 1990
27 testimony characterized the existing evidence as equivocal for excess lung cancer
28 risk attributable to exposure to such nonasbestiform EMPs.
29
- 30 • The second element comprised results of animal carcinogenicity studies involving
31 experimental intrapleural or intraperitoneal administration of various mineral
32 particles. The 1990 testimony characterized the results of the studies as providing
33 strong evidence that carcinogenic potential depends on a mineral particle's length
34 and width and reasonable evidence that neither chemical composition nor
35 mineralogic origin are critical factors in determining a mineral particle's
36 carcinogenic potential.
37
- 38 • The third element comprised the lack of routine analytical methods that can
39 accurately and consistently distinguish between asbestos fibers and
40 nonasbestiform EMPs in samples of airborne. The 1990 testimony argued that
41 asbestiform and nonasbestiform minerals can occur in the same area and
42 determining the location and identification of tremolite asbestos, actinolite
43 asbestos, and anthophyllite asbestos within deposits of their nonasbestiform

1 mineral analogs can be difficult, resulting in mixed exposures in some mining
2 operations and downstream users of their mined commodities.

3
4 Given the inconclusive epidemiological evidence for lung cancer risk associated with
5 exposure to cleavage fragments (see first bullet, above), NIOSH took a precautionary
6 approach and relied upon the other two elements to recommend that the 0.1 f/cm³ REL
7 for airborne asbestos fibers also include EMPs from the nonasbestiform analogs of the
8 asbestos minerals. In fact, the 1990 NIOSH testimony included an explicit assertion that
9 the potential risk of lung cancer from exposure to EMPs (of the nonasbestiform asbestos
10 analog minerals) warranted limiting such exposures. However, even if such EMPs were
11 not hazardous, the inability of analytical methods to accurately distinguish countable
12 particles as either asbestos fibers or cleavage fragments (of the nonasbestiform analog
13 minerals) presents a problem in the context of potentially mixed exposures (i.e., asbestos
14 fibers together with other EMPs). NIOSH's 1990 recommendation provided a prudent
15 approach to potentially mixed environments—limiting the concentration of all countable
16 particles that could be asbestos fibers to below the REL would assure that the asbestos
17 fiber component of that exposure would not exceed the REL.

18
19 Some scientists and others have questioned NIOSH's rationale for including EMPs from
20 nonasbestiform amphibole minerals in its definition of "airborne asbestos fibers."
21 Mineralogists argue that these EMPs do not have the morphological characteristics to
22 meet the mineralogical definition of "fibers"; acicular and prismatic amphibole crystals
23 and cleavage fragments generated from the massive habits of the nonasbestiform analogs
24 of the asbestos minerals are not true "fibers." Others have opined that the scientific
25 literature does not demonstrate any health risks associated with exposure to the
26 nonasbestiform EMPs covered by the NIOSH "airborne asbestos fiber" definition.

27
28 Whether or not to include EMPs from nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals in
29 Federal regulatory asbestos policies has been the subject of long-standing debate. The
30 impact of these different morphologies on exposure-related toxicity and health effects
31 continues to be a central point in the debate. In 1986, OSHA revised its asbestos standard
32 and included nonasbestiform anthophyllite, tremolite, and actinolite (ATA) as covered
33 minerals within the scope of the revised standard. OSHA's decision to include
34 nonasbestiform ATA proved controversial. In a 1990 proposal to reverse this revision,
35 OSHA [1990] noted that there were "a number of studies which raise serious questions
36 about the potential health hazard from occupational exposure to nonasbestiform
37 tremolite, anthophyllite and actinolite," but that the "current evidence is not sufficiently
38 adequate for OSHA to conclude that these mineral types pose a health risk similar in
39 magnitude or type to asbestos."

40
41 In 1992, in the preamble to the final rule removing nonasbestiform ATA from its asbestos
42 standard, OSHA [1992] stated that:

1 *various uncertainties in the data² and a body of data showing no carcinogenic*
2 *effect, do not allow the Agency to perform qualitative or quantitative risk*
3 *assessments concerning occupational exposures. Further, the subpopulations of*
4 *nonasbestiform ATA which, based on mechanistic and toxicological data, may be*
5 *associated with a carcinogenic effect, do not appear to present an occupational*
6 *risk. Their presence in the workplace is not apparent from the record evidence.*

7
8 In its 2005 proposed rule for asbestos, MSHA stated that substantive changes to its
9 asbestos definition were beyond the scope of the proposed rule and chose to retain its
10 current definition of asbestos, which “does not include nonfibrous or nonasbestiform
11 minerals” [MSHA 2005]. These decisions are reflected in MSHA’s final rule published
12 in 2008 [MSHA 2008]. In formal comments during the rulemaking process, NIOSH
13 agreed with MSHA’s decision not to modify its asbestos definition in the current
14 rulemaking, stating that “NIOSH is presently re-evaluating its definition of asbestos and
15 nonasbestiform minerals, and will work with other agencies to assure consistency to the
16 extent possible” [NIOSH 2005].

17 18 19 1.5.1.3.2 Epidemiological Studies

20
21 Epidemiological studies of populations with exposures to EMPs that have been reported
22 to be nonasbestiform have been conducted in the talc mining region of upstate New York,
23 the Homestake gold mine in South Dakota, and the taconite mining region of northeastern
24 Minnesota. A review of the findings from these investigations is presented below.

25 26 *Studies of New York Talc Miners and Millers*

27 Workers exposed to talc have long been recognized to have an increased risk of
28 developing pulmonary fibrosis, often referred to as talc pneumoconiosis [Siegel et al.
29 1943; Kleinfeld et al. 1955]. Talc-exposed workers have also been reported to have an
30 increased prevalence of pleural plaques [Siegel et al. 1943].

31
32 A number of more recent epidemiological studies and reviews have been conducted of
33 workers employed in talc mines and mills in upstate New York [Brown et al. 1979 and
34 1990; Gamble 1993; Kleinfeld et al. 1967 and 1974; Lamm and Starr 1988; Lamm et al.
35 1988; Stille and Tabershaw 1982; Honda et al. 2002; Gamble and Gibbs 2007].

36
37 Excessive rates of mesothelioma have been reported for Jefferson County, which (along
38 with adjacent St Lawrence County) is a major site of the New York talc industry [Vianna
39 et al. 1981; Enterline and Henderson 1987; Hull et al. 2002]. In a study of all
40 histologically confirmed mesothelioma cases reported to New York State’s tumor registry
41 from 1973–1978, Vianna et al. [1981] reported 6 cases from Jefferson County, resulting

² OSHA was making reference to the scientific data on which NIOSH based its own carcinogenic health effect recommendation to OSHA.

1 in a mesothelioma rate for that county more than twice that of New York State (excluding
2 New York City). In a national study of mesothelioma mortality from 1966 through 1981,
3 Enterline and Henderson [1987] reported 4 mesothelioma cases in Jefferson County
4 females (0.6 expected) and 7 cases in Jefferson County males (1.4 expected), giving that
5 county mesothelioma rates that were the 2nd and 6th highest county-specific rates in the
6 nation for females and males, respectively (both $p < 0.01$). More recently, Hull et al.
7 [2002] updated the Enterline and Henderson mesothelioma mortality analysis for
8 Jefferson County, reporting 5 new male cases (2 expected) and 3 new female cases (0.5
9 expected) through 1997 and describing Jefferson County mesothelioma death rates as “5–
10 10 times the background rate.” A potential limitation of the Enterline and Henderson
11 [1987] and Hull et al. [2002] mesothelioma death rates is that they relied on ICD code
12 163 (“malignant neoplasms of the pleura, mediastinum, and unspecified sites”) as a
13 surrogate identification for malignant mesothelioma. That code lacked specificity and
14 sensitivity for mesothelioma; in a study of Massachusetts deaths, many non-
15 mesothelioma malignancies involving the pleura were assigned code 163 and most
16 mesotheliomas were not assigned code 163 [Davis et al. 1992]. The more recent ICD-10
17 system, which has been used since 1999 to code death certificate data in the U.S.,
18 includes a discrete code for malignant mesothelioma. Based on that new ICD-10 code,
19 the age-adjusted death rates (per million population) for 1999–2004 were 12.9 (based on
20 5 mesothelioma deaths) for Jefferson County and 10.9 (based on 5 mesothelioma deaths)
21 for St. Lawrence County. These are similar to the overall U.S. mesothelioma death rates
22 for this same period (based on a total of 15,379 mesothelioma deaths) of 11.4 per million
23 [NIOSH 2007b].

24
25 An excess of lung cancer has also been reported in several epidemiological studies of
26 New York talc mines and mills [Kleinfeld et al. 1967, 1974; Brown et al. 1990; Lamm
27 and Starr 1988; Stille and Tabershaw 1982; Lamm et al. 1988; Honda et al. 2002]. The
28 most extensive research has been conducted on workers at the talc mine and mills owned
29 by RT Vanderbilt Company, Inc. (RTV), located in St. Lawrence County. A significant
30 excess of mortality from nonmalignant respiratory disease (NMRD) has been consistently
31 reported in these studies. These studies have also generally demonstrated an
32 approximately two- to three-fold increase in lung cancer mortality among these workers
33 [Brown et al. 1990; Honda et al. 2002; Lamm et al. 1988]. The lung cancer excess has
34 been reported to be particularly high among workers with more than 20 years since their
35 first exposure (latency), which is a pattern consistent with an occupational etiology
36 [Brown et al. 1979, 1990]. Authors of several studies have questioned whether the
37 excess of lung cancer observed in these studies is due to employment at the RTV mines
38 and mills or to other factors [Honda et al. 2002; Lamm et al. 1988; Stille and Tabershaw
39 1982]. Attributing these findings to employment in the RTV mine is difficult because
40 there were numerous mines operating in these counties and the mineralogic composition
41 of the ores mined varied substantially [Peterson et al. 1993]. A high smoking rate among
42 the workers at the RTV mine and mills has been suggested as one possible explanation
43 for the excess lung cancer mortality [Kelse 2005; Gamble 1993]. However, it is
44 generally considered implausible that confounding by smoking in occupational cohort

1 studies could explain such a large (i.e., ~2–3 fold) increase in lung cancer mortality
2 [Axelson 1989].

3
4 The most persuasive argument against a causal interpretation of these findings is that the
5 lung cancer excess in this study population did not increase with duration and measures
6 of exposure to talc dust [Lamm et al. 1988; Stille and Tabershaw 1982; Honda et al.
7 2002]. Also, the excess of lung cancer in this cohort has been reported to be limited to
8 workers with short employment (<1 year) [Lamm et al. 1988] and to workers who have
9 been employed in other industries prior to working in the RTV mine and mills [Lamm et
10 al. 1988; Stille and Tabershaw 1982]. The latter observation could be explained by there
11 simply being too few workers and inadequate follow-up of workers who have only
12 worked at RTV to provide the statistical power necessary to demonstrate an increased
13 lung cancer risk. For example, in one of the studies only 10% of the decedents were
14 reported to have not worked in other industries prior to their employment at RTV [Stille
15 and Tabershaw 1982].

16
17 In the most recent study of RTV miners and millers, Honda et al. [2002] examined lung
18 cancer mortality in relation to quantitative estimates of exposure to respirable talc dust
19 [Oestenstad et al. 2002]. As in previous studies, mortality from lung cancer was found to
20 be significantly elevated (standardized mortality ratio (SMR)=2.3, 95% confidence
21 interval (95%CI)=1.6–3.3). However, the excess of lung cancer mortality was found to
22 be most pronounced in short-term workers (<5 years) and inversely related to cumulative
23 exposure to respirable dust (mg/m³-d). In contrast, exposure-response relationships were
24 observed in this study between cumulative exposure to respirable dust and NMRD and
25 pulmonary fibrosis.

26
27 A plausible explanation that has been offered for the lack of exposure-response in these
28 studies is that the observed excess of lung cancer was a result of exposures from
29 employment prior to starting work at RTV. It has been suggested that many of these
30 workers may have had prior employment in neighboring talc mines in upstate New York
31 with similar exposures to talc [NIOSH 1980]. Not considering exposures at these other
32 mines could have substantially impacted results of exposure-response analyses.
33 Exposures to talc dust may also have been substantially higher in the neighboring mines
34 than in the RTV mine [Kelse 2005]. Because RTV workers may have had exposures to
35 talc dust in other mines, their exposures may have been underestimated, which could
36 explain the observed lack of an exposure-response relationship in the epidemiological
37 studies of RTV workers. There is also evidence to suggest that RTV workers may have
38 been exposed to lung carcinogens from prior work in non-talc industries [Lamm et al.
39 1988].

40
41 Gamble [1993] conducted a nested lung cancer case-control study of the RTV cohort to
42 further explore whether factors unrelated to exposures at RTV, such as smoking and
43 exposures from prior employment, might be responsible for the observed excess of lung
44 cancer among RTV workers. Cases and controls were identified from 710 workers who

1 were employed between 1947 and 1958 and vital status was ascertained through 1983.
2 All individuals with lung cancer as the underlying cause of death were included as cases
3 (n=22). Three controls (n=66) for each case were selected from members of the cohort
4 who had not died of NMRD or accidents, and were matched to cases based on dates of
5 birth and hire. Controls were also required to have survived for as long as their matched
6 case. Information on smoking and work histories was obtained by interviewing the case
7 (if alive) or relatives. An attempt was made to verify information on previous
8 employment by checking personnel records and by contacting previous employers. A
9 panel of epidemiologists and industrial hygienists classified previous non-talc
10 employment with regard to the probability of occupational exposure to a lung cancer risk.
11

12 As in previous investigations of the RTV cohort, Gamble [1993] found that the risk of
13 lung cancer decreased with increasing duration of employment at RTV. This was true
14 among both smokers and non-smokers, and also when individuals with inadequate time
15 since first exposure (<20 years) and short duration of employment were excluded. Lung
16 cancer risk was also found to decrease with increasing probability of exposure to lung
17 carcinogens from non-talc employment. A positive exposure-response relationship was
18 evident when non-RTV talc exposures were included in the analysis, although this
19 relationship was not statistically significant.
20

21 This study by Gamble [1993] does not provide support for the argument that prior
22 employment in non-talc industries was responsible for the excess of lung cancer observed
23 among RTV workers. The author interpreted his findings as providing support for the
24 argument that the excess of lung cancer was due to confounding by smoking based on the
25 fact that smoking was strongly associated with lung cancer risk and on the observation
26 that the exposure-response relationship with talc was even more strongly negative
27 (inverse) in analyses restricted to smokers than among all study subjects. However, it is
28 no surprise that an association was observed between smoking and lung cancer, and the
29 fact that the negative (inverse) exposure trend was even stronger among smokers does not
30 explain why the cohort as a whole experienced much higher lung cancer rates than
31 expected.
32

33 Only two cases of pleural mesothelioma have been reported in the cohort studies of RTV
34 miners and millers [Honda et al. 2002]. It is unclear whether these cases are attributable
35 to exposure to talc at the RTV mine and mills. One of the cases had only worked for a
36 short time in a job with minimal talc exposure, had previously worked for many years in
37 the construction of a talc mine, and had subsequently worked on repairing oil heating
38 systems. The other case developed only 15 years after first exposed (latency) to RTV
39 talc. Mesothelioma has more often been observed to develop at least 20 to 40 years from
40 the time of first exposure.
41

42 NIOSH [1980] reported that dust from this mine contains chrysotile, tremolite, and
43 anthophyllite asbestos. However, the identification of these minerals as asbestos or their
44 nonasbestiform analogs has been the subject of debate. In an industrial hygiene

1 assessment conducted at RTV mines by NIOSH [1980], X-ray diffraction and
2 petrographic microscopic analyses of talc product samples found them to contain 14–
3 48% mineral talc, 37–59% tremolite, 4.5–15% anthophyllite, and 10–15% antigorite-
4 lizardite. Based on airborne samples collected at the mine and mill and analyzed by
5 TEM, 65% of the EMPs that were longer than 5 μm in length were anthophyllite and 7%
6 were tremolite, with much of the tremolite determined to be from a non-fibrous habit.
7 Median diameters were 0.13 μm for the anthophyllite EMPs and 0.19 μm for the
8 tremolite EMPs; median lengths were 1.5 μm for the anthophyllite EMPs and 1.6 μm for
9 the tremolite EMPs. The mean time-weighted average exposure to respirable dust was
10 reported to be 0.86 mg/m^3 . In contrast, a paper prepared by Kelse [2005] reported the
11 percentage by weight of talc from the RTV mine in upstate New York as 20–40% talc,
12 40–60% nonasbestiform tremolite, 15–30% nonasbestiform antigorite-lizardite, and 1–
13 5% nonasbestiform anthophyllite. Up to 5.6% of the total product was comprised of talc
14 and talc/amphibole fibers, and up to 1.8% of the minerals were reported to have an
15 asbestiform habit, though the asbestiform component was reported not to be asbestos
16 [Kelse 2005]. Serpentine and amphibole minerals typically develop through the
17 alteration of other minerals. Consequently, they may exist as partially altered minerals
18 having variations in elemental compositions. Minerals undergoing this alteration are
19 often frequently called “transitional minerals.” Thus the elemental composition of
20 individual mineral particles can vary within a mineral deposit containing transitional
21 minerals, which could account for differences in the reported composition of talc from
22 the RTV mine.

23
24 A major limitation of the epidemiological studies of RTV talc workers is the lack of an
25 exposure-response analysis based on direct measurements of EMPs. Most of the studies
26 used tenure as a surrogate for exposure, and the exposure metric used in the Honda
27 [2002] study was respirable dust, which may not be correlated with exposure to EMPs.
28 Relationships between health outcomes and exposure to an agent of interest can be
29 attenuated when a nonspecific exposure indicator is used as a surrogate for exposure to
30 the agent of interest [Blair et al. 2007; Friesen et al. 2007]. Thus, when the exposure
31 index used to assess the effect of EMPs is based on a surrogate measure, such as
32 respirable dust, rather than on specific measurement of EMP concentrations, the lack of
33 an exposure-response relationship between the exposure index and the health outcome
34 must be considered suspect particularly where the composition of a mixed exposure
35 varies by work area.

36
37 Finally, a cohort study of Vermont talc miners and millers has some relevance for
38 interpreting the findings from the studies of New York talc workers [Selevan et al. 1979].
39 The available evidence indicates that Vermont talc is free of asbestos fibers. A
40 statistically significant excess of NMRD mortality was observed among the millers
41 (SMR=4.1, 95%CI=1.6–8.4), but not among the miners (SMR=1.6, 95%CI=0.20–9.6) in
42 this study. In contrast, respiratory cancer was found to be significantly elevated among
43 the miners (SMR=4.3, 95%CI=1.4–10), but not among the millers (SMR=1.0,
44 95%CI=0.12–4.0). The authors suggested that their respiratory cancer findings might be

1 due to non-talc exposures, such as radon progeny, because exposures to talc dust were
2 higher among millers than miners. The pattern of excess of respiratory cancer observed
3 in this study is similar to that reported in other studies of RTV miners and millers. It has
4 been argued [Lamm and Starr 1988] that this provides evidence against the hypothesis
5 that the lung cancer excess among RTV miners is related to exposure to asbestos or
6 nonasbestiform EMPs, since these were not known to be present in Vermont talc. A
7 similar pattern has been observed in the studies of talc miners and millers at RTV. In the
8 most recent update of the RTV cohort [Honda et al. 2002], NMRD mortality was found
9 to be significantly increased among both miners and millers. However, the excess of
10 lung cancer mortality among the Vermont cohort was observed among miners [Selevan
11 1979; Lamm and Starr 1988].

12
13 In summary, an excess of pulmonary fibrosis and pleural plaques is well recognized to
14 have occurred among workers exposed to talc. Mesothelioma rates have been reported to
15 be significantly elevated in Jefferson County, which is the site of some of the talc
16 industry in New York and is located adjacent to St. Lawrence County, where the in New
17 York talc industry is most concentrated. However, death data reported for 1999–2004 do
18 not suggest a particularly high rate of mesothelioma in that county. Also, aspects of the
19 few cases of mesothelioma that have been carefully evaluated in the studies of New York
20 talc miners make it unclear whether the cases are attributable to employment in the talc
21 industry. Lung cancer mortality has been consistently reported to be elevated in studies
22 of New York talc miners. However, whether this excess is attributable to exposures to
23 talc is questionable because the lung cancer excess was generally found to be most
24 pronounced in short-term workers and did not increase with cumulative exposure to talc
25 dust. Chance or confounding from smoking is highly unlikely to fully explain the large
26 lung cancer excess observed in these studies. These findings may be at least in part
27 explained by employment in other industries, including other mines in upstate New York.

28 29 *Studies of Homestake Gold Miners*

30 Three groups of investigators have conducted retrospective cohort studies of miners at the
31 Homestake gold mine in South Dakota with somewhat different and overlapping cohort
32 definitions. Gillam et al. [1976] studied 440 white males who were employed as of 1960
33 and who had worked underground for at least 5 years in the mine. McDonald et al.
34 [1978] conducted a retrospective cohort study of 1,321 men who had retired and worked
35 for at least 21 years in the mine as of 1973 and were followed for vital status until 1974.
36 Brown et al. [1986] conducted a retrospective cohort study of 3,328 miners who had
37 worked for at least 1 year between 1940 and 1965 with follow-up of vital status to 1977.
38 Follow-up of this same cohort was subsequently updated to 1990 by Steenland and
39 Brown [1995]. Exposures of potential concern at this mine include crystalline silica,
40 radon progeny, arsenic, and nonasbestiform EMPs. The longer (>5 μm) nonasbestiform
41 EMPs have been reported to be primarily cummingtonite-grunerite (69%), but tremolite-
42 actinolite (15%) and other nonasbestiform amphibole varieties (16%) were also detected
43 [Zumwalde et al. 1981]. Most of the EMPs observed by TEM (70–80%) were shorter

1 than 5 μm ; for the entire population of EMPs, the geometric mean length was 3.2 μm and
2 the geometric mean diameter was 0.4 μm .

3
4 There is very little evidence of an excess of mesothelioma in the studies of Homestake
5 gold miners. One case of mesothelioma with “low” dust exposure was reported in the
6 study by McDonald et al. [1978]. Slight excesses of cancers of the peritoneum (4 cases;
7 SMR=2.8, 95%CI=0.76–7.2) and other respiratory cancer (3 cases: SMR=2.5,
8 95%CI=0.52–7.4) were reported in the most recent study [Steenland and Brown 1995].
9 These categories might be expected to include cases of mesothelioma; however,
10 mesothelioma was not mentioned on the death certificates for these cases.

11
12 Significant excesses in mortality from tuberculosis and pneumoconiosis (mainly silicosis)
13 were observed in all of the studies. An excess of respiratory cancer (10 cases observed,
14 SMR=3.7, 95%CI=1.8–6.7) was reported in the earliest study by Gillam et al. [1976].
15 Respiratory cancer mortality was not found to be elevated (34 cases, SMR=1.0,
16 95%CI=0.71–1.4) and there was only weak evidence that it increased with level of
17 exposure in the study by McDonald et al. [1978]. A slight excess of lung cancer (115
18 cases, SMR=1.1, 95%CI=0.94–1.4) was reported in the most recent study based on
19 comparison with U.S. mortality rates [Steenland and Brown 1995]. This lung cancer
20 excess was more pronounced when county rates (SMR=1.3, 95%CI=1.0–1.5) and even
21 more so when South Dakota state rates (SMR=1.6, 95%CI=1.3–1.9) were used as the
22 referent. The excess was also increased (based on U.S. rates: SMR=1.3, 95%CI=1.0–1.6)
23 when the analysis was restricted to individuals with at least 30 years of time since first
24 exposure (latency). Lung cancer mortality was not found to increase with estimated
25 cumulative exposure to dust in this study, though a clear exposure-response trend was
26 observed for pneumoconiosis. The limited available data on smoking habits indicated
27 that miners in this cohort smoked slightly more than the U.S. general population in a
28 1960 survey.

29
30 Taken together, the studies of Homestake gold miners provide at best weak evidence of
31 an excess risk of lung cancer. These weak findings are particularly surprising because of
32 the well documented exposures in the mine to crystalline silica, which has been
33 recognized as a human lung carcinogen [IARC 1997], and because clear excesses of lung
34 cancer have been reported in other studies of gold miners [e.g., Hnizdo and Sluis-Cremer
35 1991; Wyndham et al. 1986]. Although small excesses of lung cancer have been reported
36 in the most recent studies of the Homestake gold miners, the increased mortality has not
37 been found to increase with measures of cumulative dust exposure. The uncertainty of the
38 relationship between contemporary dust and EMPs exposures hinders the usefulness of
39 historical dust measurement data in estimating EMP exposures [Zumwalde et al. 1981].
40 Thus the lack of exposure-response reported in these studies for cancer is largely
41 uninformative with respect to the hypothesis that nonasbestiform EMPs are associated
42 with increased risk of respiratory diseases in this population.

1 *Studies of Taconite Miners*

2 There has been a long history of concern about a potential association between exposures
3 associated with the taconite iron ore industry in northeastern Minnesota and the risk of
4 respiratory cancers and diseases. This concern started in 1973, when amphibole fibers
5 were found in the Duluth water supply and were traced to tailings that had been disposed
6 of in Lake Superior by the Reserve Mining Company. Extensive sampling and analysis
7 of areas of the Peter Mitchell taconite iron ore mines was recently reported by Ross et al.
8 [2007] who reported finding “no asbestos fibers of any type” in the mines. However,
9 they did find and describe fibrous ferroactinolite, fibrous ferrian sepiolite, fibrous
10 grunerite-ferroactinolite, and fibrous actinolite in ore samples, some of which was very
11 thin ($<0.01\ \mu\text{m}$) with a very high aspect ratio. They estimated fibrous amphibole material
12 to represent “a tiny fraction of one percent of the total rock mass of this taconite deposit”
13 [Ross et al. 2007].

14
15 Several epidemiological studies have examined mortality of miners working in the
16 taconite mines and mills of Minnesota. Higgins et al. [1983] published the earliest study,
17 which examined the mortality of approximately 5,700 workers employed at the Reserve
18 Mining Company between 1952 and 1976 and followed up to 1976. Overall mortality
19 (SMR=0.87) and mortality from respiratory cancer (15 cases, SMR=0.84) were both less
20 than expected. Respiratory cancer mortality was not found to be increased among
21 workers with at least 15 years since first exposure (latency) and did not increase with
22 estimated cumulative exposure to dust. The maximum follow-up of this cohort was 24
23 years, which is probably too short to be able to detect increased mortality from lung
24 cancer or mesothelioma.

25
26 Cooper et al. [1988, 1992] have reported on the mortality experience of 3,431 miners and
27 millers who were employed in the Erie or Minntac mines and mills for at least 3 months
28 between 1947 and 1958. Follow-up of the cohort, initially to 1983 [Cooper et al. 1988],
29 was extended to 1988 in their more recent update [Cooper et al. 1992]. Comparisons
30 were made with white male mortality rates for Minnesota and for the U.S. population.
31 Mortality from respiratory cancer was found to be slightly less than expected in this study
32 (106 cases, based on Minnesota rates: SMR=0.92, 95%CI=0.75–1.1). Respiratory cancer
33 mortality was close to the expected value (46 cases, based on Minnesota rates:
34 SMR=0.99, 95%CI=0.72–1.3) among workers with more than 20 years since first
35 exposure (latency).

36
37 A statistically significant excess of mesothelioma has been reported in northeastern
38 Minnesota, which is the area in which the taconite mining and milling industry is located
39 [MDH 2007]. In its most recent report, the Minnesota Department of Health (MDH)
40 reported that a total of 159 cases occurred in this region during the period of 1988 to
41 2006. The mesothelioma rate in males was approximately twice the expected rate based
42 on the rest of the state (146 cases, rate ratio (RR)=2.1, 95%CI=1.8–2.5), while the rate in
43 females was less than expected (RR=0.72, 95%CI=0.38–1.2). The fact that the excess of
44 mesothelioma was only observed among males strongly suggests an occupational

1 etiology. In addition to the taconite industry, a plant producing asbestos ceiling tiles
2 (Conwed Corporation) was located in the northeastern Minnesota region. From 1958–
3 1965 amosite was used at Conwed, and from 1966–1974 chrysotile was used [Mandel
4 2008]. The MDH has initiated epidemiological studies of mesothelioma incidence
5 among workers at the Conwed Corporation and at the iron mines in northeastern
6 Minnesota. The records from a cohort of approximately 72,000 iron miners and from
7 5,700 Conwed workers have been linked with a mesothelioma data registry. Between
8 1988 and 2007, a total of 58 mesothelioma cases have been identified among the miners
9 and 25 cases have been identified among the Conwed workers. Because only 3 of the 58
10 mesothelioma cases identified in the miner cohort had also been employed at Conwed, it
11 is unlikely that the mesothelioma excess in miners could be explained by asbestos
12 exposures during employment at the Conwed ceiling tile facility [MDH 2007].
13

14 Brunner et al. [2007] have recently reported findings from an MDH study of
15 mesothelioma cases occurring among iron miners between 1988 and 1996. The job
16 histories of the cases were reviewed for evidence of exposure to commercial asbestos.
17 Mining jobs were identified from company personnel files. Non-mining employment
18 information was obtained from worker application files, worker compensation records,
19 and obituaries. Potential asbestos exposures for jobs held in the mining industry were
20 identified by conducting interviews of 350 workers representing 122 occupations and 7
21 different mining companies. An expert panel rated the potential for asbestos exposure
22 based on these interviews, available job descriptions from the relevant time period, and
23 their knowledge of the mining environment to estimate the probability and intensity of
24 potential exposure to commercial asbestos in each of the jobs. Fifteen of 17 iron miners
25 known to have developed mesothelioma were judged to have sufficiently good work
26 histories for the study. Eleven of the cases were reported to have had probable exposure,
27 and 3 were reported to have possible exposure to commercial asbestos. The asbestos
28 exposures were from non-mining jobs (4 cases), mining jobs (4 cases), or both (6 cases).
29 The findings from this study suggest that the excess of mesothelioma observed among
30 taconite miners might be explained by exposure to commercial asbestos rather than from
31 the nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs generated during iron ore processing. However,
32 this being a case series, it was not possible to determine whether commercial asbestos
33 exposure was different in the cases than in the cohort as a whole or in a control group.
34 This study also did not include the 41 additional mesothelioma cases that have been
35 reported by the MDH since 1996 [MDH 2007].
36

37 In summary, the results from cohort mortality studies of taconite miners and millers in
38 Minnesota have not provided any evidence of an increased risk of respiratory cancer or
39 mesothelioma. This appears to be somewhat in conflict with reports from the MDH that
40 mesothelioma incidence is significantly elevated among males (but not females) in
41 northeastern Minnesota and that a large number of these cases were workers in the
42 Minnesota taconite industry. There is some evidence that these cases could, at least in
43 part, be related to exposures to commercial asbestos that occurred in or outside of the
44 taconite mining industry, but further research on this question is needed. The MDH is

1 currently working with researchers at the University of Minnesota, School of Public
2 Health on a mesothelioma case-control study, a respiratory morbidity study, and a
3 mortality study of the iron miners of northeastern Minnesota [MDH 2007].
4

5 *Summary of Epidemiological Studies of Cohorts Exposed to Nonasbestiform EMPs*

6 The results from studies of populations reportedly exposed to nonasbestiform EMPs do
7 not provide clear answers regarding the toxicity of these EMPs. There are a number of
8 features of these studies that limit their usefulness for answering these questions. First,
9 the populations in these studies were exposed to a complex mixture of particles.
10 Nonasbestiform EMPs generally represented only a small component of airborne
11 exposures, which included other minerals such as silica that are known to cause lung
12 diseases. Thus, although an excess of pneumoconiosis has been observed in the studies
13 of Homestake gold miners and New York talc workers, the extent to which these findings
14 are attributable to their exposures to nonasbestiform EMPs cannot be determined. A
15 potential limitation of the New York talc studies is that if the EMPs do include
16 asbestiform minerals as reported in the NIOSH [1980] study, it is difficult to determine
17 whether the observed health effects are from asbestiform or other EMPs.
18

19 Another major limitation of these studies is that they lack adequate information on past
20 exposure to EMPs. An excess of respiratory cancer was observed in the occupational
21 studies of New York talc workers and a small excess was observed in the most recent
22 study of Homestake gold miners. In both studies, the excess of respiratory cancer was
23 not found to increase with cumulative exposure to dust. Relationships between health
24 outcomes and exposure to an agent of interest can be attenuated when a nonspecific
25 exposure indicator is used as a surrogate for exposure to the agent of interest [Blair et al.
26 2007; Friesen et al. 2007]. Thus, when the exposure index used to assess the effect of
27 EMPs is based on a surrogate measure, such as respirable dust, rather than on specific
28 measurement of EMP concentrations, the lack of an exposure-response relationship
29 between the exposure index and the health outcome must be considered suspect
30 particularly where the composition of a mixed exposure varies by work area.
31 Interpretation of findings from the New York talc studies has been further complicated by
32 the employment of the workers elsewhere, including employment at other talc mines in
33 the area. Lack of positive findings with respect to exposure-response analyses in the
34 New York talc studies could also have resulted from exposure misclassification caused
35 by not including exposures at neighboring talc mines with similar exposures which may
36 have resulted in an under-ascertainment of exposure to talc and other mineral particles in
37 these studies.
38

39 The reliability of death certificate information is another major limitation, particularly for
40 the diagnosis of mesothelioma. Mesothelioma did not have a discrete ICD code until the
41 10th revision of the ICD, used for U.S. death certificate data only since 1999. This may
42 explain the apparent contradiction between the lack of an excess of mesothelioma in the
43 cohort studies of taconite miners, and the excess of mesothelioma that has been reported
44 in the more recent studies based on a mesothelioma registry in northeastern Minnesota.

1
2 Finally, the lack of information on cigarette smoking habits of the studied workers is a
3 major issue in interpreting the findings for respiratory cancer in these studies. Concerns
4 about cigarette smoking in occupational cohort studies is generally based on the
5 assumption that blue collar workers smoke more than the general population. However,
6 the extent of this bias is generally not expected to be able to account for more than a 50%
7 increase in lung cancer risk and is unlikely to explain the 2- to 3-fold risk reported in the
8 New York talc studies. Confounding by smoking could conceivably explain the small
9 excess of lung cancer that has been reported in the most recent study of Homestake gold
10 miners [Steenland and Brown 1995]. However, smoking may have introduced a negative
11 bias in some of these studies. Cigarette smoking has been reported to have been banned
12 in the Homestake gold mines [Brown et al. 1986] and in the underground taconite mines
13 [Lawler et al. 1985]. Preventing workers from smoking at work could have negatively
14 biased the lung cancer findings in these studies.

15
16 Because of the study limitations described above, the findings from these studies should
17 best be viewed as providing inconclusive as opposed to negative evidence regarding the
18 health hazards associated with exposures to nonasbestiform EMPs. To be more
19 informative, additional studies of these populations would need improved
20 characterizations of exposure to EMPs, smoking status, and exposures associated with
21 other employment. Additional studies of these populations should be pursued if these
22 improvements are deemed feasible.

23 24 1.5.1.3.3 Animal Studies

25
26 In NIOSH's rational for its 1990 recommendation that the REL for airborne asbestos
27 fibers encompass cleavage fragments from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos
28 minerals, discussion of results of animal carcinogenicity studies cited several original
29 studies and reviews [Stanton et al. 1977, 1981; Wagner et al. 1982; Muhle et al. 1987;
30 Pott et al. 1974, 1987; Lippmann et al. 1988]. NIOSH [1990a] concluded that the cited
31 papers provided evidence indicating that fiber dimension (and not fiber composition) was
32 the major determinant of carcinogenicity for mineral fibers, stating that:

33 *Literature reviews by Lippmann [1988] and Pott et al. [1987] enhance the*
34 *hypothesis that any mineral particle can induce cancer and mesothelioma if it is*
35 *sufficiently durable to be retained in the lung and if it has the appropriate aspect*
36 *ratio and dimensions. Similarly, Wagner [1986] concluded that all mineral*
37 *particles of a specific diameter and length size range may be associated with*
38 *development of diffuse pleural and peritoneal mesotheliomas.*

39
40 That general conclusion notwithstanding, a study by Smith et al. [1979] that was not cited
41 by NIOSH in 1990 addressed the specific question of carcinogenicity of EMPs from
42 nonasbestiform amphiboles. Pleural tumor induction by intrapleural (IP) injection
43 challenge in hamsters was compared for various challenge materials including two
44 asbestiform tremolites and two nonasbestiform (prismatic) tremolitic talcs. In contrast to

1 the two asbestiform tremolites, which induced tumors in 22% and 42% of challenged
2 hamsters at the higher dose, no tumors resulted following challenge with either of the two
3 nonasbestiform tremolites [Smith et al. 1979]. In its rule-making, OSHA noted several
4 limitations of the study, including the small number of animals in the study, the early
5 death of many animals, and the lack of systematic characterization of fiber size and
6 aspect ratio [OSHA 1992]. One of the nonasbestiform tremolitic talcs was later analyzed
7 and confirmed to have tremolitic chemical composition and 13% “fibers” as defined by a
8 3:1 aspect ratio [Wylie et al. 1993].
9

10 Since 1990, another carcinogenicity study of nonasbestiform amphibole minerals has
11 been published. An IP injection study in rats used six samples of tremolite, including
12 three asbestiform samples that induced mesothelioma in 100%, 97%, and 97% of
13 challenged animals [Davis et al. 1991]. Two nonasbestiform tremolite samples resulted
14 in mesotheliomas in 12% and 5% of the animals, at least the former incidence being
15 above expected background levels. Another sample that was predominantly
16 nonasbestiform but contained a small amount of asbestiform tremolite resulted in
17 mesothelioma in 67% of animals. Of note, the nonasbestiform material associated with
18 the 12% mesothelioma incidence and this latter material contained an approximately
19 equal number of EMPs longer than 8 μm and thinner than 0.5 μm .
20

21 Studies of *in vitro* assays of various biological responses, some published before and
22 some after 1990, have also found relative toxicities of asbestiform and nonasbestiform
23 materials that generally parallel the differences observed in the *in vivo* animal IP injection
24 studies of tumorigenicity [Wagner et al. 1982; Woodworth et al. 1983; Hansen and
25 Mossman 1987; Marsh and Mossman 1988; Sesko and Mossman 1989; Janssen et al.
26 1994; Mossman and Sesko 1990], and a recent review of the literature concluded that
27 cleavage fragments of amphiboles are less potent than asbestos fibers [Mossman 2007].
28

29 In summary, there is substantially more literature now than in 1990 pertaining to
30 differential animal carcinogenicity and toxicity of EMPs from nonasbestiform
31 amphiboles (i.e., cleavage fragments) in comparison with asbestos fibers. More detailed
32 discussion of these studies, including discussion of important limitations of the studies,
33 can be found in Section 1.6.4 of this document.
34

35 1.5.1.3.4 Analytical Limitations 36

37 The third element that served as a basis for NIOSH’s recommendation in 1990 was the
38 inability to accurately and consistently distinguish asbestos fibers and nonasbestiform
39 EMPs in samples of airborne particulate. The 1990 NIOSH testimony argued that
40 asbestiform and nonasbestiform minerals can occur in the same area and determining the
41 location and identification of tremolite asbestos, actinolite asbestos, and anthophyllite
42 asbestos within deposits of their nonasbestiform mineral analogs can be difficult,
43 resulting in mixed exposures in some mining operations and downstream users of their

1 mined commodities. These inherent factors of mineral deposits are not likely to change,
2 and the potential for contamination and mixed exposures remains.

3
4 The 1990 NIOSH testimony further pointed out the lack of routine analytical methods for
5 air samples that can accurately and consistently differentiate asbestos fibers and EMPs
6 from their nonasbestiform analogs that meet the dimensional criteria of a countable
7 particle.

8
9 Two analytical components of the NIOSH REL for airborne asbestos fibers are applied to
10 air samples, the microscopic methods and the counting rules. The microscopic methods
11 include:

- 12
13 • *Phase contrast microscopy* (PCM) — Analytical Method 7400 “A rules” —
14 Asbestos and Other Fibers by PCM [NIOSH 1994a] is used to count all particles
15 that are longer than 5 μm and have a length-to-width ratio equal to or greater than
16 3:1.
- 17
18 • *Transmission electron microscopy* (TEM) — Analytical Method 7402 —
19 Asbestos by TEM [NIOSH 1994b] is used as a supplement to the PCM method
20 when there is uncertainty about the identification of elongated particles (EPs) that
21 are counted. When TEM analysis is used for particle identification, only those
22 EPs that are identified as “asbestos” and meet the dimensional criteria used by
23 PCM ($>0.25 \mu\text{m}$ width and $>5\mu\text{m}$ length) are counted and compared with PCM
24 counts to yield corrected “asbestos” fiber counts.

25
26 There are several limitations with the use of PCM and TEM for asbestos analysis. PCM
27 is stated to be limited to observing EPs with widths $>0.25 \mu\text{m}$ and is not equipped for
28 particle identification. TEM, while capable of resolving EPs with widths as small as
29 $0.001 \mu\text{m}$, frequently cannot differentiate nonasbestiform from asbestiform EMPs when
30 the elemental composition is the same or when present in a heterogeneous mix of
31 unknown particles. Important limitations of TEM are that partial lengths of long fibers
32 that intersect grid bars are hidden, and the small TEM fields of view tend to bias the
33 analyst towards only the thinnest of fibers. Another limitation of both methods is that
34 high concentrations of background dust collected on samples may interfere with fiber
35 counting by PCM and particle identification by TEM.

36
37 Thus, the current PCM and TEM methods used for routine exposure assessment continue
38 to have the limitation of not being able to differentiate between individual asbestiform
39 and nonasbestiform EMPs. Further discussion of these methods and possible
40 improvements that could lead to methods which differentiate between these varieties is
41 provided in Section 1.7.

1.6 Determinants of Particle Toxicity and Health Effects

Current recommendations for assessing occupational and environmental exposures to asbestos fibers rely primarily on EMP dimensional and mineralogical characteristics. Dimension is an important determinant of toxicity in terms of where EMPs deposit in the lung as well as impact on clearance mechanisms and retention time in the lung. However, other particle characteristics, such as durability in lung fluids, chemical composition, and surface activity, have been identified as possibly playing important roles in causing respiratory diseases. Research to elucidate what roles these EMP characteristics play in causing biological responses may help to provide better evidence-based recommendations for asbestos fibers and other EMPs.

1.6.1 Deposition

Deposition of airborne particles in the respiratory system is defined as the loss of particles from the inspired air during respiration. Clearance pertains to the removal of these deposited particles by diverse processes over time, whereas retention is the temporal persistence of particles within the respiratory system [Morrow 1985]. The deposition of inhaled particles in the respiratory tract is a function of their physical characteristics (dimension and density) and of anatomical and physiological parameters of the airways [Yu et al. 1986]. While particle chemical composition does not play a role in deposition, respiratory clearance of all particle types is dependent on both physical and chemical characteristics of the particle. In addition, surface charge and hydrophilicity, as well as adsorbed materials (e.g., coatings on synthetic fibers) and other physical and chemical factors, determine whether small particles can be easily dispersed in the air or will agglomerate into larger, non-respirable masses [ILSI 2005].

Depending on their physical characteristics, inhaled particles are deposited in one of the following three respiratory system compartments: the extra-thoracic region consisting of the anterior and posterior nose, mouth, pharynx, and larynx; the bronchial region consisting of the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles down to and including the terminal bronchioles; and the alveolar-interstitial region including respiratory bronchioles, alveolar ducts, and alveolar sacs.

Important parameters for the deposition of airborne particles are their aerodynamic and thermodynamic properties. Below a particle size of 0.5 μm aerodynamic equivalent diameter (AED), thermodynamic properties prevail. The AED of EPs is mostly determined by their geometric diameter and density. Deposition of EPs in an airway is strongly related to the orientation of the particle with respect to the direction of the air flow and is affected by the interrelationship of four major deposition mechanisms: impaction, interception, sedimentation, and diffusion [Asgharian and Yu 1988]. In a study to assess EP deposition in the tracheobronchial region, Zhou et al. [2007] evaluated the deposition efficiencies of carbon fibers (3.66 μm diameter) using two human airway

1 replicas that consisted of the oral cavity, pharynx, larynx, trachea, and 3 to 4 generations
2 of bronchi. Carbon fiber deposition was found to increase with the Stokes number,
3 indicating that inertial impaction is the dominant mechanism. Also, fiber deposition in
4 the tracheobronchial region was lower than that of spherical particles at a given Stokes
5 number, indicating a greater likelihood for small-width EPs to move past the upper
6 respiratory tract and reach the lower airways where diffusional deposition occurs [Yu et
7 al.1986]. These results were consistent with studies evaluating the deposition of asbestos
8 using a similar tracheobronchial cast model [Sussman et al. 1991a,b].
9

10 11 ***1.6.2 Clearance and Retention*** 12

13 A variety of mechanisms are associated with the removal of deposited particles from the
14 respiratory tract [Warheit 1989]. Physical clearance of insoluble particles deposited in
15 the lung is an important physiological defense mechanism that usually serves to moderate
16 any risk that might otherwise be associated with exposure to particles. Inhaled particles
17 that deposit on respiratory tract surfaces may be cleared by the tracheobronchial
18 mucociliary escalator or nasal mucus flow to the throat and then may be either
19 expectorated or swallowed. The role of clearance, as a pulmonary protective mechanism,
20 depends upon the physicochemical properties of the inhaled particles, the sites of
21 deposition, and respiratory anatomy and physiology. For example, inhaled insoluble
22 particles with larger AEDs tend to be deposited on the nasopharyngeal mucus and are
23 generally cleared by sneezing or nose blowing or by flow into the oropharynx where they
24 are swallowed. Insoluble particles with smaller AEDs tend to deposit lower in the
25 respiratory tract, with associated longer retention times. Those deposited in the alveolar
26 region are subject to longer retention times than those deposited on the bronchial region
27 [Lippmann and Esch 1988].
28

29 The most important process for removal of insoluble particles from the airways is
30 mucociliary clearance, which involves a moving layer of mucus by the action of ciliated
31 airway cells that line the trachea, bronchi, and terminal bronchioles [Warheit 1989]. The
32 mucociliary transport system is sensitive to a variety of agents, including cigarette smoke
33 and ozone [Vastag et al. 1985]. These toxicants affect the speed of mucus flow and
34 consequent particle clearance by altering ciliary action and/or modifying the properties
35 and/or amount of mucus. Chronic exposure to cigarette smoke has been shown to cause a
36 prolonged impairment of particulate clearance from the bronchial region. This impaired
37 clearance is associated with increased retention of asbestos fibers in the bronchi, where
38 they stimulate inflammatory processes in the bronchial epithelium [Churg et al. 1992;
39 Churg and Stevens 1995].
40

41 Because the alveolar region of the lung does not possess mucociliary clearance
42 capability, particles (generally <2 μm AED) deposited in this region are cleared at a
43 much slower rate than particles deposited in the bronchial region. Particles that are
44 soluble may dissolve and be absorbed into the pulmonary capillaries, while insoluble

1 particles may physically translocate from the alveolar airspace [Lippmann et al. 1980;
2 Lippmann and Schlesinger 1984; Schlesinger 1985]. Most insoluble EPs that deposit in
3 the alveolar regions are phagocytized (i.e., engulfed) by alveolar macrophages.
4 Macrophages contain lysosomes packed with digestive enzymes, such as acid hydrolases,
5 at acidic pH levels. Lysosomal contents are capable of digesting many—though not all—
6 types of phagocytized particles. Alveolar macrophages that have phagocytized particles
7 tend to migrate to the bronchoalveolar junctions, where they enter onto the mucociliary
8 escalator for subsequent removal from the lung [Green 1973]. It has been postulated by
9 some investigators that dissolution of particles within macrophages is a more important
10 determinant of long-term clearance kinetics for many mineral dusts than is mucociliary
11 transport and the migratory potential of lung macrophages [Brain et al. 1994]. However,
12 there are circumstances which can disrupt the normal phagosomal function of alveolar
13 macrophages. One such type of circumstance involves the toxic death of macrophages
14 initiated by highly reactive particle surfaces (e.g., crystalline silica particles). Another
15 such circumstance involves overwhelming the capacity of macrophages by an extreme
16 burden of deposited particles, sometimes referred to as “overload,” even by particles that
17 would be considered “inert” at lower doses. A third type of circumstance, typified by
18 asbestos fibers, involves EPs that, even though having a small enough AED (defined
19 primarily by particle width) to permit deposition in the alveolar region, cannot be readily
20 phagocytized because particle length exceeds macrophage capacity. When alveolar
21 macrophages attempt to phagocytize such EPs, they cannot completely engulf them
22 (sometimes referred to as “frustrated phagocytosis”) and lysosomal contents are released
23 into the alveolar space. “Frustrated phagocytosis” can initiate a process in which reactive
24 oxygen species (ROS) are generated, stimulating the induction of tumor necrosis factor-
25 alpha (TNF- α). TNF- α is considered an inflammatory and fibrogenic cytokine that plays
26 an important role in the pathogenesis of pulmonary fibrosis [Blake et al. 1998].

27
28 All three types of disruption of normal macrophage function contribute to decreased
29 particle clearance rates and can result in inflammation of the alveolar spaces. In addition,
30 particles that are not phagocytized in the alveoli can translocate to the lung interstitium,
31 where they may be phagocytized by interstitial macrophages or transported through the
32 lymphatics to pulmonary lymph nodes [Lippmann et al. 1980; Lippmann and Schlesinger
33 1984; Schlesinger 1985; Oberdorster et al. 1988]. Tran and Buchanan [2000] have
34 reported that for humans the sequestration of particles in the interstitial compartment is a
35 more prominent feature than the retention of particles due to overload that is observed in
36 animal studies. The importance of interstitialization in humans is consistent with the
37 kinetic differences observed in lung clearance rates in humans and rats. The first-order
38 rate coefficient for alveolar clearance is approximately 1 order of magnitude faster in rats
39 than in humans [Snipes 1996], which may allow for greater interstitialization of particles
40 in humans at all levels of lung dust burden. These findings indicate that adjustment of
41 kinetic differences in particle clearance and retention is required when using rodent data
42 to predict lung disease risks in humans and that current human lung models
43 underestimate the working lifetime lung dust burdens in certain occupational populations
44 [Kuempel et al. 2001].

1
2 Evidence from *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies in rodents indicates that EPs (vitreous glass
3 and EMPs) with a length equal to or greater than the diameter of rodent lung
4 macrophages (about 15 μm) are most closely linked to biological effects observed in
5 rodent lungs [Blake et al. 1998]. Alveolar macrophages appear to be capable of
6 phagocytizing and removing EMPs shorter than approximately 15 μm , either by transport
7 to the mucociliary system or to local lymph channels. With increasing length above
8 approximately 15 μm , alveolar macrophages appear to be increasingly ineffective at
9 physical removal, resulting in differential removal rates for EPs of different lengths.
10 While EP lengths greater than 15 μm appear to be associated with toxicity in
11 experimental studies with rodents, a “critical” length for toxicity in humans is probably
12 greater than 15 μm [Zeidler-Erdely et al. 2006]. For long EPs that cannot be easily
13 cleared by macrophages, biopersistence in the lung is influenced by the ease with which
14 the EPs can break into shorter lengths.

15 16 17 ***1.6.3 Biopersistence and other Potentially Important Particle Characteristics***

18
19 The differences in crystalline structure between amphibole asbestos fibers and amphibole
20 cleavage fragments have been hypothesized to account for apparent differences in
21 toxicological response to these particles. It has been observed that cleavage fragments
22 which meet the dimensional criteria for countable particles under Federal regulatory
23 policies for asbestos fibers are generally shorter and wider than asbestos fibers [Siegrist
24 and Wylie 1980; Wylie 1988]. This difference in dimension between populations of
25 asbestos fibers and populations of cleavage fragments might contribute to generally
26 shorter biopersistence in the lung for cleavage fragments compared to asbestos fibers.
27 Asbestos fibers also tend to separate longitudinally once deposited in the lung, thus
28 increasing the total number of retained fibers without an accompanying reduction in
29 lengths of the retained fibers [NRC 1984]. In contrast, cleavage fragments tend to break
30 transversely due to dissolution of their weaker crystalline structure, resulting in shorter
31 particles that can be more easily cleared through phagocytosis and mucociliary clearance
32 [Zoltai 1981]. The impact of these structural differences on solubility in lung fluids
33 warrants study, because substantial differences in solubility in lung fluids between
34 asbestos fibers and other EMPs (including amphibole cleavage fragments) could translate
35 into differences in toxicity.

36 37 38 ***1.6.3.1 Biopersistence***

39
40 Dissolution of EPs in the lung is a poorly understood process that is dependent on particle
41 characteristics, biological processes, and concomitant exposure to other particulates. The
42 ability of an EP to be retained and remain intact in the lung is considered to be an
43 important factor in the process of an adverse biological response. EPs of sufficient length
44 that remain intact and are retained in the lung are thought to pose the greatest risk for

1 respiratory disease. The ability of an EP to reside long-term in the lung is generally
2 referred to as “biopersistence.” Biopersistence of EPs in the lung is a function of the site
3 and rate of deposition, their rates of clearance by alveolar macrophages and mucociliary
4 transport, their solubility in lung fluids, their breakage rate and breakage pattern
5 (longitudinal or transverse), and their rates of translocation across biological membranes.
6 The rates of some of these processes can affect the rates of other processes. For example,
7 the rate of deposition in the alveolar region could potentially overwhelm macrophage
8 clearance mechanisms and increase the rate of translocation to the lung interstitium.

9
10 The persistence of an EP in the lung is influenced by changes that may occur in its
11 dimension, surface area, chemical composition, and surface chemistry. Differences in
12 any of these characteristics can potentially result in differences in clearance and retention
13 and affect toxic potential. For example, EPs too long to be effectively phagocytized by
14 alveolar macrophages will tend to remain in the alveolar compartment and be subjected
15 to other clearance mechanisms, including dissolution, breakage, and translocation to
16 interstitial sites and subsequently to pleural and other sites.

17
18 The durability of EPs residing in the lung is considered an important characteristic which
19 influences biopersistence. An EP’s durability is generally measured by its ability to resist
20 dissolution and mechanical disintegration after being subjected to lung extra-cellular fluid
21 (approximately pH 7) and lysosomal fluids (approximately pH 5). EPs that are more
22 soluble will be less biopersistent, and EPs with greater thickness may take longer to
23 dissolve than thinner EPs, all else being equal. For example, long, thin EPs that are not
24 very durable could dissolve and/or fragment into shorter EPs, increasing their probability
25 of being cleared from the lung and thus potentially decreasing lung retention time and
26 risk for neoplastic effects. Some EPs, such as certain types of glass fibers, are fairly
27 soluble in lung fluid and are cleared from the lung in a matter of days or months. Other
28 EPs, such as amphibole asbestos, can remain in the lung for decades. It has been
29 suggested that some types of EPs may alter the mobility of macrophages and the
30 translocation of EPs to the pleura or lymph nodes [Davis 1994]. No relationship has been
31 established between biopersistence of EPs in the lung and the risk of induction of genetic
32 and epigenetic changes that may lead to cancer [Barrett 1994]. While some evidence
33 indicates that durability may be a determinant of toxicity for SVFs, EMPs need to be
34 evaluated to determine whether they conform to this paradigm [ILSI 2005].

35
36 Measurement of the biopersistence of various EMPs has been suggested as a means for
37 estimating their relative potential hazard. Short-term inhalation and intratracheal
38 instillation studies have been used to determine the biopersistence of various SVFs and
39 asbestos fibers. Animal inhalation studies are preferred over animal tracheal instillation
40 studies to assess biopersistence because they more closely mimic typical human
41 exposure. The European Commission has adopted specific testing criteria that permit the
42 results from either short-term biopersistence studies or chronic animal studies to be used
43 as a basis for determining carcinogenicity [European Commission 1997].
44

1 Several animal inhalation studies have indicated that oncogenic potential of long SVFs
2 can be determined by their biopersistence [Mast et al. 2000; Bernstein et al. 2001;
3 Moolgavkar et al. 2001]. It has been suggested that a certain minimum persistence of
4 long fibers is necessary before even minute changes start to appear in the lungs of
5 exposed animals [Bernstein et al. 2001]. Furthermore, Moolgavkar et al. [2001] have
6 suggested that fiber-induced cancer risk, in addition to being a linear function of exposure
7 concentration, is also a linear function of the weighted half-life of fibers observed in
8 inhalation studies with rats. Furthermore, dosimetry models for rodents and humans
9 indicate that, on a normalized basis, fiber clearance rates are lower in humans than in rats
10 [Maxim and McConnell 2001] and that fibers frequently sequester in the interstitial
11 compartment of humans [Snipes 1996; Tran and Buchanan 2000]. Thus, results from
12 chronic inhalation studies with rodents exposed to EPs may underestimate risks for
13 humans and adjustment for kinetic differences in particle clearance and retention in rats is
14 required to predict lung disease risks in humans [Kuempel et al. 2001].
15

16 Dissolution studies using *in vitro* assays have been conducted with various SVFs and
17 silicate minerals to determine the dissolution rate in simulated lung and lysosomal fluids
18 [Hume and Rimstidt 1992; Werner et al. 1995; Hesterberg and Hart 2000; Jurinski and
19 Rimstidt 2001]. *In vitro* studies can provide a rapid and more controlled alternative to
20 classical long-term toxicity testing in animals and could provide useful information when
21 performed as companion experiments with *in vivo* studies if conditions of exposure and
22 test agent can be made similar. The design of *in vitro* assays is intended to mimic the
23 biological conditions that exist in the lung once the fiber comes into contact with lung
24 tissue or macrophages. While uncertainties exist about the specific physiological
25 processes that occur in the lung, results from *in vitro* assays can provide some insight into
26 the chemical reactions that influence fiber dissolution. For example, it appears that fiber
27 dissolution occurs more readily when the fiber is in contact with a fluid that is under-
28 saturated with respect to the fiber's composition. The condition of under-saturation must
29 be maintained at the fiber's surface for dissolution to continue. If a fiber is surrounded
30 by a saturated or super-saturated solution (compared to the fiber composition), then no
31 further dissolution occurs.
32

33 The results from many *in vitro* experiments demonstrate different patterns of dissolution
34 for most of the tested fiber types under various test conditions. This effect was most
35 notable in those experiments where different pH conditions were used. Fluid pH appears
36 to influence the creation of complexes from the leached elements of the fiber, which in
37 turn alters the rate of solubility. Chrysotile fibers tend to dissolve readily in acids
38 because of the preferential leaching of Mg from the fiber. The leaching of Mg from
39 tremolite and anthophyllite and Na from crocidolite also occurs more readily in acid
40 conditions.
41

42 Rate of fiber dissolution has also been observed to be affected by differing internal and
43 surface structures of the fiber. EMPs with porous or rough surfaces have larger surface
44 areas compared to smooth fibers with the same gross dimensions. These larger surface

1 areas interact more readily with the surrounding medium because of the greater number
2 of sites where solute molecules can be absorbed. EMPs with cleavage plane surfaces will
3 contain varying degrees of defects; the higher the number of surface defects, the greater
4 the potential instability of the particle. Dissolution of these types of EMPs is typically
5 initiated where surface vacancies or impurities are present [Searl 1994]. Chrysotile
6 asbestos is an example of a sheet silicate made up of numerous fibrils comprised of
7 tightly bound rolled layers of Mg hydroxide. These Mg hydroxide layers are readily
8 leached by acid solutions within human tissues [Spurny 1983], causing disintegration of
9 the fibril's crystalline structure. In contrast, the amphibole asbestos minerals are chain
10 silicates with a crystalline structure comprised of alkali and alkali earth metals that are
11 tightly bound, making the fibers less susceptible to dissolution. In contrast to the
12 crystalline structure of the asbestos fibers, some high-temperature glass fibers are more
13 stable than chrysotile fibers because they are comprised of silicate chains, sheets, and
14 frameworks [Searl 1994]. The absence of cleavage planes or structural defects in glass
15 fibers limits the degree to which fluids can penetrate their interior to promote dissolution.
16 In some experiments chrysotile fibers were less durable in rat lungs than some high-
17 temperature SVFs [Bellmann et al. 1987; Muhle et al. 1987] but more durable in
18 physiological solutions than some refractory ceramic fibers (RCFs) [Scholze and Conradt
19 1987].
20

21 EMP surface characteristics (e.g., structural defects, porous surfaces) and composition
22 not only influence the rate of dissolution, but also affect the manner in which dissolution
23 occurs. In some instances, surface dissolution will cause alterations in internal structure
24 sufficient to cause mechanical breakage. In some studies, slagwools and rockwools
25 exposed to water developed irregular surfaces, creating stress fractures which caused
26 transverse breakage [Bellmann et al. 1987]. Similar occurrences of glass fiber breakage
27 have been observed when there was leaching of alkaline elements [Searl 1994].
28

29 Results from *in vitro* and short-term *in vivo* studies conducted with various EMPs and
30 SVFs provide some confirmation that persistence of EPs in the lung is influenced by
31 particle durability [Bernstein et al. 1996]. However, other evidence suggests that,
32 because of the relatively short biodurability of chrysotile fibers, any damage to the lung
33 tissue caused by chrysotile fibers must take place soon after exposure [Hume and
34 Rimstidt 1992], suggesting that biopersistence of EPs in the lung may be one of many
35 factors that contribute to biological response. A better understanding of the factors that
36 determine the biological fate of EMPs deposited in the lung is critical to understanding
37 the mechanisms underlying differences in toxic potential of various EMPs of different
38 dimensions and compositions. Because biopersistence of EMPs is thought to play an
39 important role in the development of disease, it may eventually prove to be an important
40 characteristic to incorporate into occupational safety and health policies concerning
41 exposures to EMPs.
42
43
44

1 1.6.3.2 Other Potentially Important Particle Characteristics

2
3 Fiber surface composition and surface-associated activities have been suggested as
4 factors affecting the potential for disease induction [Bonneau et al. 1986; Kane 1991;
5 Jaurand 1991; Fubini 1993]. For non-elongated respirable mineral particles, surface
6 composition and surface interactions can directly and profoundly affect *in vitro* toxicities
7 and *in vivo* pathogenicity; they can also directly cause membranolytic, cytotoxic,
8 mutagenic, or clastogenic damage to cells, and have been shown to induce fibrogenic
9 activities in animals and humans. Investigation is warranted to confirm that these effects
10 of surface composition and surface interactions also apply to EMPs. One strategy is to
11 determine the effects of careful and well-characterized surface modification of different
12 types of EMPs to determine cell-free interactions with biological materials, *in vitro*
13 cellular cytotoxicities or genotoxicities, and pathology in animal models.

14
15 Surface properties of mineral fibers and other EMPs may be a direct factor in cytotoxic or
16 genotoxic mechanisms responsible for fibrogenic or carcinogenic activity. Chemical
17 surface modification of asbestos fibers has been shown to affect their cytotoxicity [Light
18 and Wei 1977a,b; Jaurand et al. 1983; Vallyathan et al. 1985]. While asbestos fibers
19 clearly can be carcinogenic, they are not consistently positive in genotoxicity assays;
20 their principal damage is chromosomal rather than gene mutation or DNA damage
21 [Jaurand 1991]. One study linked cytotoxicity with *in vitro* mammalian cell
22 transformation [Hesterberg and Barrett 1984]; thus, surface factors affecting cytotoxicity
23 might affect potential for inducing some genotoxic activities. However, surface
24 modification of a well-characterized sample of chrysotile fibers to deplete surface Mg
25 while retaining fiber length did not result in a significant quantitative difference for *in*
26 *vitro* micronucleus induction between the native and surface-modified materials, both of
27 which were positive in the assay [Keane et al. 1999].

28
29 The surface of mineral fibers and other EMPs also might be an indirect but critical factor
30 in the manifestation of pathogenic activity. EMP surfaces may be principal determinants
31 of EMP durability under conditions of *in vivo* dissolution in biological fluids. As such,
32 they would be a controlling factor in biopersistence, critical to the suggested mechanisms
33 of continuing irritation or inflammatory response in causing fibrosis or neoplastic
34 transformation.

35 36 37 1.6.4 Animal and In Vitro Toxicity Studies

38
39 Over the last half-century, *in vivo* animal model studies have explored induction of
40 cancer, mesothelioma, and pulmonary fibrosis by asbestos fibers and other EMPs
41 following intrapleural, intraperitoneal, or inhalation challenge. Numerous cell-free, *in*
42 *vitro* cellular, and *in vivo* short-term animal model studies have been pursued, attempting
43 to: (1) examine tissue and cellular responses to EMPs and impact of EMP conditioning
44 on these responses; (2) identify and evaluate interactions and mechanisms involved in

1 pathogenesis; and (3) seek morphological or physicochemical EMP properties controlling
2 those mechanisms. These short-term studies provide an evolving basis for design or
3 interpretation of higher-tier chronic exposure studies of selected EMPs.
4

5 Some of the short-term studies have addressed:

- 6 • the general question of extrapolating human health effects from *in vivo* animal
7 model studies;
 - 8 • the physiological relevance of *in vitro* cellular studies of EMP toxicities;
 - 9 • the association of EMP dimensions with pathology demonstrated in animal
10 model studies;
 - 11 • the potential mechanisms and associated EMP properties responsible for
12 initiating cell damage;
 - 13 • the extensive information now available on a “central dogma” of subsequent
14 intracellular biochemical pathway stimulation leading to toxicity or
15 intercellular signaling in disease promotion; and
 - 16 • the use of these mechanistic paradigms to explain specific questions of:
 - 17 ○ differences between the activities of asbestiform and nonasbestiform
18 EMPs including seemingly anomalous differences between some *in vitro*
19 and *in vivo* EMP activities;
 - 20 ○ differences between the activities of erionite fibers and amphibole
21 asbestos fibers; and
 - 22 ○ the possibility of EMP-viral co-carcinogenesis.
- 23

24 Several reviews and recommendations for animal model and cellular studies on these
25 issues have been developed by expert workshops and committees. Early studies on the
26 carcinogenicity of asbestos and erionite fibers were reviewed by IARC [1977, 1987a,b]
27 and SVFs were reviewed more recently [IARC 2002]. Short-term *in vivo* and *in vitro*
28 studies to elucidate mechanisms of fiber-induced genotoxicity and genetic mechanisms
29 affecting fiber-induced lung fibrosis have been extensively reviewed. A review for the
30 EPA by an international working group assembled in 2003 provides an update on short-
31 term assay systems for fiber toxicity and carcinogenic potential [ILSI 2005], and two
32 additional reviews discuss the fiber genotoxicity literature up to the current decade
33 [Jaurand 1997; Schins 2002].
34

36 1.6.4.1 Model Systems Used to Study EMP Toxicity 37

38 The paucity of human health effects information for some new synthetic EPs has led to
39 renewed considerations of the value and limitations of animal model studies, and the
40 question of the interpretability of intrapleural, intraperitoneal, or inhalation challenge
41 methods of animal model tests to make predictions of human health effects [IARC 2002].
42 One analysis concluded that rat inhalation is not sufficiently sensitive for prediction of
43 human carcinogenicity by EMPs other than asbestos fibers [Muhle and Pott 2000].

1 Another review concluded that there are significant interspecies differences between the
2 mouse, hamster, rat, and human, with the available evidence suggesting that the rat is
3 preferable as a model for the human, noting that rats develop fibrosis at comparable lung
4 burdens, in fibers per gram of dry lung, to those that are associated with fibrosis in
5 humans. The review suggested that, on a weight-of-evidence basis, there is no reason to
6 conclude that humans are more sensitive to fibers than rats with respect to the
7 development of lung cancer [Maxim and McConnell 2001]. However, others suggest
8 that, because inhaled particles frequently sequester in the interstitial compartment of
9 humans, alveolar clearance is approximately 1 order of magnitude faster in rats than
10 humans [Snipes 1996; Tran and Buchanan 2000]. Those comparisons imply that results
11 of inhalation studies with rats exposed to particles underestimate the risk for humans and
12 that adjustment for kinetic differences in particle clearance and retention in rats is
13 required to predict lung disease risks in humans [Kuempel et al. 2001].
14

15 How the results of *in vitro* tests which use cells or organ cultures apply to humans has
16 been questioned because of differences in cell types and species-specific responses. It is
17 difficult to isolate and maintain epithelial or mesothelial cells for use as models.
18 Interpretation of *in vitro* test results may be limited because *in vitro* models may not
19 consider all processes, such as clearance or surface conditioning, which occur *in vivo*. A
20 major deficiency of *in vitro* systems is that biopersistence is not easily addressed. In
21 addition to the usual exposure metric of mass, experimental designs should also include
22 exposure metrics of EMP number and surface area [Mossman 2007; Wylie et al. 1997].
23

24 As frequently performed, *in vitro* assays of mineral particle-induced damage, measured
25 by cell death or cytosolic or lysosomal enzyme release, do not adequately model or
26 predict the results of *in vivo* challenge or epidemiological findings. For example,
27 respirable aluminosilicate clay dust is as cytotoxic as quartz dust in such *in vitro* assays,
28 while quartz, but not clay, is strongly fibrogenic *in vivo* [Vallyathan et al. 1988].
29
30

31 1.6.4.2 Studies on Effects of Fiber Dimension

32

33 Early animal inhalation studies found that chrysotile fibers induced fibrosis, hyperplasia
34 of lung epithelial cells, and carcinomas in mice [Nordman and Sorge 1941] and tumors in
35 rats [Gross et al. 1967]. Another study found lung carcinomas and mesotheliomas in rats
36 inhalationally exposed to asbestos fiber samples of amosite, anthophyllite, crocidolite,
37 and chrysotile [Wagner et al. 1974]. The effects of fiber length, width, and aspect ratio
38 on carcinogenicity were addressed in a seminal study using a pleural surface implantation
39 method of challenge in the rat [Stanton et al. 1977, 1981]. Tests were performed on 72
40 durable EPs: 13 crocidolites; 22 glasses; 8 aluminum oxide sapphire whiskers; 7 talcs; 7
41 dawsonites; 4 wollastonites; 2 asbestos tremolites; an amosite; 2 attapulgitic; 2
42 halloysites; a silicon carbide whisker; and 3 titanates. The incidence of malignant
43 mesenchymal neoplasms a year after implantation correlated best with EPs that were
44 longer than 8 μm and no wider than 0.25 μm , with relatively high correlations with EPs

1 longer than 4 μm and no wider than 1.5 μm . This suggested that carcinogenicity of
2 durable EPs depends on dimension and durability rather than physicochemical properties.
3 This is sometimes referred to as the “Stanton hypothesis” and has been the subject of
4 continuing research. Reanalysis of the dimensions of seven of the crocidolite samples
5 used in the 1981 study found that tumor probability was significantly correlated with the
6 number of index particles (defined as particles longer than 8 μm and no wider than 0.25
7 μm), but the coefficient was low enough to suggest that factors other than size and shape
8 play a role in carcinogenic effects of durable EPs [Wylie et al. 1987]. Further analysis
9 confirmed the number of such index particles as the primary dimensional predictor of
10 tumor incidence, but the correlation was increased when the data were analyzed by
11 separate mineral types [Oehlert 1991]. These analyses suggested that mineral type is
12 important, which is counter to the “Stanton hypothesis.”
13

14 Data from animal models exposed by instillation or inhalation of EMPs of defined size
15 distributions have been reviewed, along with human lung fiber burden data and
16 associated effects, to conclude that: (1) asbestosis is most closely associated with the
17 surface area of retained EMPs; (2) mesothelioma is most closely associated with numbers
18 of EMPs longer than about 5 μm and thinner than about 0.1 μm ; and (3) lung cancer is
19 most closely associated with EMPs longer than about 10 μm and thicker than about 0.15
20 μm [Lippmann 1988]. A more recent review of the response to asbestos fibers of various
21 lengths in animal models, along with data from studies of human materials, concluded
22 that asbestos fibers of all lengths induce pathological responses, and suggested caution
23 when attempting to exclude any subpopulation of inhaled asbestos fibers, based on their
24 length, from being considered contributors to the development of asbestos-related
25 diseases [Dodson et al. 2003].
26
27

28 *1.6.4.3 Initiation of Toxic Interactions* 29

30 A first question in seeking a full understanding of EMP properties and mechanisms
31 responsible for fibrosis, lung cancer, or mesothelioma risks is the identity of initiating
32 toxic interactions and the morphological, physical, or chemical properties of EMPs
33 controlling them. Among proposed initiating mechanisms are: (1) EMP surfaces generate
34 ROS (even *in vitro* in the absence of cells) which are the primary toxicants to cells; (2)
35 EMP surfaces are directly membranolytic or otherwise directly cytotoxic or genotoxic to
36 components of the cell, as are some non-elongated mineral particles, and that damage can
37 cause necrosis, apoptosis, mutation, or transformation directly or by responsive cellular
38 production of secondary reactive intermediates; and (3) EMP morphology itself can result
39 in “frustrated phagocytosis” with an anomalous stimulation or release of ROS or other
40 toxic reactive species.
41
42
43
44

1 1.6.4.3.1 Reactive Oxygen Species

2
3 Asbestos fibers can generate ROS or reactive nitrogen species in *in vitro* systems through
4 direct aqueous-phase surface chemical reactions, as well as by stimulating secondary
5 release of reactive species from cells. Electron spin resonance using spin-trapping
6 techniques found that crocidolite, chrysotile, and amosite asbestos fibers were all able to
7 catalyze the generation of toxic hydroxyl radicals in a cell-free system containing
8 hydrogen peroxide, a normal byproduct of tissue metabolism, and that the iron chelator
9 desferroxamine inhibited the reaction, indicating a major role for iron in the catalytic
10 process [Weitzman and Graceffa 1984]. ROS generated by some EMP surfaces in cell-
11 free media may provide toxicants to initiate cell structural or functional damage,
12 including chromosomal or DNA genetic damage or aneuploidy from spindle apparatus
13 damage. They also may activate cellular signaling pathways that promote cell
14 proliferation or transformation. Research has investigated the possible roles of iron in
15 this reactivity and the roles of released versus surface-borne iron.

16
17 Asbestos fibers can cause lipid peroxidation in mammalian cells and artificial membranes
18 that can be prevented by removal of catalytic iron. Reduction of crocidolite asbestos
19 cytotoxicity by certain antioxidants (including superoxide dismutase (SOD), a depletor of
20 superoxide anion (SO⁻); catalase, a scavenger of hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂);
21 dimethylthiourea (DMTU), a scavenger of the hydroxyl radical (•OH); and
22 desferroxamine, an iron chelator) suggested that iron is involved in the generation of
23 ROS through a modified Haber-Weiss Fenton-type reaction resulting in the production of
24 hydroxyl radical (e.g., from SO and H₂O₂ generated during phagocytosis) [Goodglick
25 and Kane 1986; Shatos et al. 1987]. Such scavenging or chelation prevented DNA strand
26 breakage in cells *in vitro* by crocidolite fibers [Mossman and Marsh 1989].

27
28 In a cell-free study of five natural and two synthetic fibers, erionite, JM code 100 glass
29 fibers, and glass wool were the most effective initiators of hydroxyl radical formation,
30 followed by crocidolite, amosite, and chrysotile fibers. Hydroxyl radical formation
31 activity showed positive correlations with tumor rates in rats challenged by intrapleural
32 injection and with human mesothelioma mortality rates, but not with tumor rates in rats
33 challenged by intraperitoneal injection [Maples and Johnson 1992]. SO-produced ROS
34 then might induce DNA oxidative damage, measured as elevated 8-
35 hydroxydeoxyguanosine (8-OHdG). In cell-free systems, the crocidolite-induced
36 increase of 8-OHdG in isolated DNA was enhanced by addition of H₂O₂ and diminished
37 by addition of desferroxamine [Faux et al. 1994]. However, de-ironized crocidolite fibers
38 incubated in a cell-free system induced twice the 8-OHdG oxidative damage to DNA as
39 untreated crocidolite fibers. In parallel rat exposures, the combination of de-ironized
40 crocidolite fibers plus Fe₂O₃ resulted in mesothelioma in all animals compared to half the
41 animals injected with crocidolite fibers alone and none of the animals injected with
42 Fe₂O₃ alone [Adachi et al. 1994]. Other research suggested that unreleased fiber-surface-
43 bound iron is important to the reactivity; long fibers of amosite and crocidolite both
44 caused significant dose-dependent free radical damage to cell-free phase DNA,

1 suppressible by the hydroxyl radical scavenger mannitol and by desferroxamine, but short
2 RCFs and man-made vitreous fibers (MMVFs) did not, while releasing large quantities of
3 Fe(III) iron [Gilmour et al. 1995]. Crocidolite fibers induced mutations in peritoneal
4 tissue *in vivo* in rats, most prominently guanine-to-thymine (G-to-T) transversions known
5 to be induced by 8-OHdG; this was interpreted as strong evidence for the involvement of
6 ROS or reactive nitrogen species in crocidolite-induced mutagenesis *in vivo*, consistent
7 with *in vitro* and cell-free studies [Unfried et al. 2002]. In contrast to glass fiber,
8 crocidolite fiber intratracheal instillation in rats increased 8-OHdG levels in DNA at one
9 day and in its repair enzyme activity at seven days. This *in vivo* activity is consistent
10 with asbestos- and MMVF-induced increases of 8-OHdG oxidative damage *in vitro*
11 [Yamaguchi et al. 1999].

12 13 1.6.4.3.2 Membrane Interactions

14
15 Many mineral particles, elongated or not, can directly cause membranolysis or other
16 cytotoxic responses without necessarily invoking extracellular generation of ROS.
17 Mechanisms of cell damage by EMPs independent of ROS formation have been proposed
18 to involve direct interactions of particle surface functional groups (e.g., silicon or
19 aluminum or magnesium) with lipoproteins or glycoproteins of the cell membrane. It has
20 been suggested that silica particle cytotoxicity to macrophages is due to distortion and
21 disruption of secondary lysosomal membranes by phagocytosed particles whose surface
22 silanol groups hydrogen-bond to membrane lipid phosphates, but that chrysotile-induced
23 cellular release of hydrolytic enzymes is due to surface magnesium interacting ionically
24 with sialic acid residues of membrane glycoproteins, inducing cation leakage and osmotic
25 lysis [Allison and Ferluga 1977]. Chrysotile fibers cause lysis of red blood cells. EM
26 indicates that cell membranes become wrapped around the fibers and that cell distortion
27 and membrane deformation correlate with an increase in the intracellular ratio of sodium
28 to potassium ions. Cell pretreatment with neuraminidase prevents fiber-cell binding,
29 suggesting mediation by cell membrane glycoproteins [Brody and Hill 1983]. However,
30 chrysotile and crocidolite fibers both induced increased membrane rigidity in model
31 unilamellar vesicles made of saturated dipalmitoyl phosphatidylcholine (DPPC),
32 suggesting that lipid peroxidation is not involved in membrane rigidity induced by
33 asbestos [Gendek and Brody 1990]. Silicate slate dust and chrysotile fibers both induced
34 hemolysis *in vitro* and peroxidation of polyunsaturated membrane lipids. However,
35 poly(2-vinylpyridine N-oxide) (PVPNO) and DPPC surface prophylactic agents
36 suppressed lysis but not peroxidation, while SOD and catalase did the reverse; and lysis
37 was much faster than peroxidation. This suggested that membrane lysis and peroxidation
38 are independent processes [Singh and Rahman 1987]. However, either mechanism may
39 be involved in membrane damage by EMPs; and seemingly disparate findings suggest
40 uncharacterized details of EMP properties or of cellular or mineral conditioning under
41 test conditions may be important.

42
43 In *in vitro* studies, quartz dust and chrysotile fibers induced loss of viability and release
44 of lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) from alveolar macrophages. DPPC reduced these

1 activities of the quartz but not of the asbestos [Schimmelpfeng et al. 1992]. DPPC is
2 adsorbed from aqueous dispersion in approximately equal amounts on a surface area
3 basis, about 5 mg phospholipid per square meter, by asbestos fibers [Jaurand et al. 1980]
4 and by non-fibrous silicate particles [Wallace et al. 1992]; this is close to the value
5 predicted by mathematical modeling of an adsorbed bilayer [Nagle 1993]. In the case of
6 silica or clay membranolytic dusts, this adsorption fully suppresses their activity until
7 toxicity is manifest as the prophylactic surfactant is digested from the particle surface by
8 lysosomal phospholipase enzyme, with mineral-specific rates of the process suggesting a
9 basis for differing fibrogenic potentials of different types of mineral particles [Wallace et
10 al. 1992].

11
12 Samples of intermediate-length and short-length NIEHS chrysotile were compared, with
13 and without DPPC lung surfactant pre-treatment, for micronucleus induction in Chinese
14 hamster lung V79 cells *in vitro*. Increase in micronuclei frequency and multi-nuclear cell
15 frequency were induced by all samples, with the greatest micronucleus induction by
16 untreated intermediate-length chrysotile fibers and with greater activity for untreated
17 versus treated short chrysotile fibers. Cell viability was greater for treated fibers [Lu et
18 al. 1994]. NIEHS intermediate-length chrysotile was mildly acid-treated to deplete
19 surface-borne magnesium while only slightly affecting fiber length. Challenge of
20 Chinese hamster lung fibroblast cells *in vitro* for micronucleus induction found no
21 significant difference between the treated and untreated samples, supporting a model of
22 chemically non-specific chromosomal and spindle damage effects [Keane et al. 1999].
23 Chrysotile fiber induction of mucin secretion in a tracheal cell culture was inhibited by
24 using lectins to block specific carbohydrate residues on the cell surface; leached
25 chrysotile was inactive, suggesting that the surface cationic magnesium of chrysotile was
26 responsible for interaction with cell surface glycolipids and glycoproteins [Mossman et
27 al. 1983]. However, complete removal of accessible sialic acid residues from
28 erythrocytes did not inhibit hemolysis by chrysotile fibers, suggesting that chrysotile
29 fibers can induce lysis by interaction with some other component of the cell [Pelé and
30 Calvert 1983].

31 32 1.6.4.3.3 Morphology-mediated Effects

33
34 A third possible mechanism for damage by EMP principally involves morphology. The
35 possibility of “frustrated phagocytosis” is suggested by the Stanton hypothesis of an over-
36 riding significance of particle dimension for disease induction by durable EPs. A general
37 concept is that EMPs longer than a phagocytic cell’s linear dimensions can not be
38 completely incorporated in a phagosome. Recruitment of membrane from the Golgi
39 apparatus or endoplasmic reticulum may provide extensive addition to the plasma
40 membrane for a cell’s attempted invagination to accommodate a long EMP in a
41 phagosomal membrane [Aderem 2002]. However, because of the length of the EMP
42 relative to the dimensions of the cell, the final phagosomal structure is topologically an
43 annulus extending fully through the cell, rather than an enclosed vacuole fully within the
44 cell. Following uptake of non-elongated particles, there is a maturation of the

1 phagosomal membrane; the initial phagosomal membrane is that of the cell's external
2 plasmalemma, which cannot kill or digest phagocytosed material. After sealing of the
3 fully invaginated phagosomal vesicle in the interior of the cell, there is a rapid and
4 extensive change in the membrane composition [Scott et al. 2003]. This involves, in part,
5 an association with lysosomal vesicles and exposure of particles within the secondary
6 phagosome or phagolysosome to lytic enzymes and adjusted pH conditions. Failure to
7 close the phagosome, as occurs in frustrated phagocytosis, is speculated to induce
8 dysfunction of the system. Conventional phagocytosis of non-elongated particles can
9 lead to a respiratory or oxidative burst of membrane-localized NADPH oxidase of SO
10 radicals, which may be converted to H₂O₂, hydroxyl radicals, and other toxic reactive
11 products of oxygen. If these are released extracellularly in connection with frustrated
12 phagocytosis, they are potentially harmful to the tissue [Bergstrand 1990].
13

14 Failure to complete normal phagocytosis may affect the duration or intensity of the
15 phagocytic response. It may also affect the generation or release of reactive species or
16 membranolytic digestive enzymes into the still-exterior annulus. Another possible affect
17 is to alter the maturation of the annular frustrated phagocytic membrane from the normal
18 structural and functional evolution of a closed phagolysosomal vesicle fully interior to the
19 cell. Even in the response to such a frustrated phagocytosis, there might be some mineral
20 specificity beyond morphology alone for EMP-induced release of reactive species.
21 Amosite fibers, MMVF, silicon carbide fibers, and RCF-1 fibers all stimulated modest
22 release of SO which was not dose-dependent in isolated rat alveolar macrophages.
23 However, when IgG, a normal component of lung lining fluid, was adsorbed onto the
24 fiber surfaces, such release was strongly enhanced for all but the silicon carbide fibers.
25 SO release correlated with adsorptive capacity for IgG of the fibers, except for the
26 amosite, which required only poorly adsorbed IgG for strong activity, suggesting some
27 mineral specificity beyond morphology alone for the EMP-induced cellular respiratory
28 burst [Hill et al. 1996].
29

30 1.6.4.3.4 Cellular Responses to Initiation of Toxicity

31
32 Subsequent to initiating damage, either by direct or induced ROS generation, or by direct
33 membranolysis generated by interactions of mineral surface sites with membrane lipids
34 or glycoproteins, or by not-fully-defined toxic response to morphology-based frustrated
35 phagocytosis, a standard model for subsequent complex cellular response has evolved
36 and has been the subject of extensive and detailed analyses [Mossman et al. 1997]. EMP-
37 generated primary toxic stimuli to the cell are subject to signal transduction by mitogen-
38 activated protein kinase (MAPK), beginning an intracellular multiple kinase signal
39 cascade which then induces transcription factors in the nucleus such as activator protein
40 (AP)-1 or nuclear factor kappa beta (NF-κB), which in turn regulate the transcription of
41 mRNA from genes for TNF-α or other cytokines involved in cell proliferation or
42 inflammation.
43

1 Fibers of the six asbestos minerals generate MAPK in lung epithelium *in vitro* and *in*
2 *vivo*, increasing AP-1 transcription activation, cell proliferation, death, differentiation, or
3 inflammation. This is synergistic with cigarette smoke [Mossman et al. 2006].
4 Macrophage release of oxidants or mitogenic factors through such a pathway could then
5 cause cell proliferation or DNA damage [Driscoll et al. 1998]. In contrast to MMVF-10
6 and RCF-4, amosite and two other carcinogenic fibers (silicon carbide and RCF-1)
7 produced significant dose-dependent translocation of NF- κ B to the nucleus in A549 lung
8 epithelial cells. It was hypothesized that carcinogenic fibers have greater free radical
9 activity, which produces greater oxidative stress and results in greater translocation of
10 NF- κ B to the nucleus for the transcription of pro-inflammatory genes (e.g., cytokines)
11 [Brown et al. 1999]. Crocidolite induced AP-1 *in vitro* in JB6 cells and induced AP-1
12 transactivation in pulmonary and bronchial tissue after intratracheal instillation in
13 transgenic mice, apparently mediated by activation of MAPK [Ding et al. 1999].
14 Chrysotile challenge to blood monocytes co-cultured with bronchial epithelial cells
15 resulted in elevated levels in epithelial cells of protein-tyrosine kinase activity, NF- κ B
16 activity, and mRNA levels for IL-1 β , IL-6, and TNF- α . Protein-tyrosine kinase activity,
17 NF- κ B activity, and mRNA synthesis were inhibited by antioxidants, suggesting ROS-
18 dependent NF- κ B-mediated transcription of inflammatory cytokines in bronchial
19 epithelial cells [Drumm et al. 1999].
20

21 Chemokines known to be associated with particle-induced inflammation were found to be
22 secreted by mesothelial cells after amosite challenge to cultured rat pleural mesothelial
23 cells, and were found in pleural lavage of rats challenged *in vivo* [Hill et al. 2003].
24

25 Fibers from both crocidolite (asbestiform riebeckite) and nonfibrous milled riebeckite
26 increased phosphorylation and activity of a MAPK cascade in association with induction
27 of an inflammatory state of rat pleural mesothelial cells and progenitor cells of malignant
28 mesothelioma. Amelioration by pre-incubation with vitamin E indicated this to be an
29 oxidative stress effect [Swain et al. 2004]. Lung lysate, cells from bronchoalveolar
30 lavage, and alveolar macrophages and bronchiolar epithelial cells from lung sections
31 from rats exposed to crocidolite or chrysotile fibers contained nitrotyrosine and
32 phosphorylated extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERKs); nitrotyrosine is a marker
33 for peroxynitrite which activates ERK signaling pathways, altering protein function
34 [Iwagaki 2003]. *In vitro* challenge of human bronchiolar epithelial cells with crocidolite
35 or chrysotile fibers induced tissue factor (TF) mRNA expression and induced NF- κ B and
36 other transcription factors that bind the TF gene promoter. TF *in vivo* is involved in
37 blood coagulation with inflammation and tissue remodeling [Iakhiaev et al. 2004].
38 Asbestos fibers activate an ERK pathway *in vitro* in mesothelial and epithelial cells.
39 Crocidolite challenge to mice results in phosphorylation of ERK in bronchiolar and
40 alveolar type II epithelial cells, epithelial cell hyperplasia, and fibrotic lesions. Epithelial
41 cell signals through the ERK pathway lead to tissue remodeling and fibrosis [Cummins et
42 al. 2003].
43

1 Crocidolite and erionite fibers, but not non-fibrous milled riebeckite, up-regulated
2 expression of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) in rat pleural mesothelial cells *in*
3 *vitro*. Cell proliferation was co-localized subsequent to EGFR, suggesting initiation of a
4 cell-signaling cascade to cell proliferation and cancer [Faux et al. 2000]. “Long” amosite
5 fibers were more active than “short” amosite fibers in causing: (1) damage to nude DNA;
6 (2) *in vitro* cytotoxicity in a human lung epithelial cell line; (3) free radical reactions; (4)
7 inhibition of glycerol-6-phosphate dehydrogenase and pentose phosphate pathways; (5)
8 decrease in intracellular reduced glutathione; (6) increase in thiobarbituric acid reaction
9 substances; and (7) leaking of LDH [Riganti et al. 2003].

10
11 An important paradox or seeming failure of *in vitro* studies concerns mesothelioma.
12 While chrysotile or amphibole asbestos fibers clearly induce malignant mesothelioma *in*
13 *vivo*, they do not transform primary human mesothelial cells *in vitro*, while erionite fibers
14 do. Asbestos fibers can induce some genotoxic changes; crocidolite fibers induced
15 cytogenotoxic effects, including increased polynucleated cells and formation of 8-OHdG
16 in a phagocytic human mesothelial cell line, but did not induce cytogenotoxic effects in a
17 non-phagocytic human promyelocytic leukemia cell line [Takeuchi et al. 1999].
18 Tremolite, erionite, RCF-1, and chrysotile fiber challenges of human-hamster hybrid
19 A(L) cells found chrysotile fibers to be significantly more cytotoxic. Mutagenicity was
20 not seen at the hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (HPRT) locus for any of
21 the fibers. Erionite and tremolite fibers induced dose-dependent mutations at the gene
22 marker on the only human chromosome in the hybrid cell. Erionite was the most
23 mutagenic type of fiber. RFC-1 fibers were not mutagenic, in seeming contrast to their
24 known induction of mesothelioma in hamsters [Okayasu et al. 1999]. Crocidolite fibers
25 induced significant but reversible DNA single-strand breaks in transformed human
26 pleural mesothelial cells; TNF- α induced marginal increases; co-exposure to crocidolite
27 fibers and TNF- α caused greater damage than fibers alone. Antioxidant enzymes did not
28 reduce the DNA damage, suggesting a mechanism of damage other than by free radicals
29 [Ollikainen et al. 1999]. Crocidolite fibers were also very cytotoxic to the cells;
30 presumably cell death may prevent the observation of cell transformation. *In vitro*
31 challenge to mesothelial cells and to fibroblast cells by crocidolite fibers, but not by glass
32 wool, induced dose-dependent cytotoxicity and increased DNA synthesis activity
33 [Cardinali et al. 2006]. Crocidolite fibers were found to induce TNF- α secretion and
34 receptors in human mesothelial cells, and TNF- α reduced cytotoxicity of crocidolite
35 fibers by activating NF- κ B and improving cell survival and permitting expression of
36 cytogenetic activity [Yang et al. 2006]. Erionite fibers transformed immortalized non-
37 tumorigenic human mesothelial cells *in vitro* only when exposed in combination with IL-
38 1 β or TNF- α [Wang et al. 2004]. Erionite fibers were poorly cytotoxic but induced
39 proliferation signals and high growth rate in hamster mesothelial cells. Long-term
40 exposure to erionite fibers resulted in transformation of human mesothelial cells *in vitro*,
41 but exposure to asbestos fibers did not transform those cells [Bertino et al. 2007]. *In vitro*
42 challenge of mesothelial cells to asbestos fibers induced cytotoxicity and apoptosis, but
43 not transformation. *In vitro* challenge of human mesothelial cells to asbestos fibers
44 induced the ferritin heavy chain of iron-binding protein, an anti-apoptotic protein, with

1 decrease in H₂O₂ and other ROS and resistance to apoptosis [Aung et al. 2007]. This
2 was seen also in a human malignant mesothelial cell line.

3
4 The question of a co-carcinogenic effect of asbestos fibers with a virus has been raised.
5 Most malignant mesotheliomas are associated with asbestos exposures, but only a
6 fraction of those exposed develop mesothelioma, indicating that other factors may play a
7 role. It has been suggested that simian virus 40 (SV40) and asbestos fibers may be co-
8 carcinogens. SV40 is a DNA tumor virus that causes mesothelioma in hamsters and has
9 been detected in several human mesotheliomas. Asbestos fibers appear to increase
10 SV40-mediated transformation of human mesothelial cells *in vitro* [Carbone et al. 2002].
11 In an *in vivo* demonstration of co-carcinogenicity of SV40 and asbestos fibers, mice
12 containing high copy number of SV40 viral oncogene rapidly developed fast-growing
13 mesothelioma following asbestos challenge. Transgenic copy number was proportional
14 to cell survival and *in vitro* proliferation [Robinson et al. 2006].

15
16 Various mechanisms exist to protect cells and tissues against oxidants, and it is
17 conceivable that genetic and acquired variations in these systems may account for
18 individual variation in the response to oxidative stress [Driscoll et al. 2002]. Similarly,
19 species differences in antioxidant defenses or the capacity of various defenses may
20 underlie differences in response to xenobiotics that act, in whole or part, through
21 oxidative mechanisms. Oxidative mechanisms of response to xenobiotics is especially
22 relevant to the respiratory tract, which is directly and continually exposed to an external
23 environment containing oxidant pollutants (e.g., ozone, oxides of nitrogen) and particles
24 which may generate oxidants as a result of chemical properties or by stimulating
25 production of cell-derived oxidants. In addition, exposure to particles or other pollutants
26 may produce oxidative stress in the lung by stimulating the recruitment of inflammatory
27 cells. For example, the toxicity of asbestos fibers likely involves the production of
28 oxidants, such as hydroxyl radical, SO, and H₂O₂. Studies have also shown that asbestos
29 fibers and other mineral particles may act by stimulating cellular production of ROS and
30 reactive nitrogen species. In addition to direct oxidant production, exposure to asbestos
31 and SVFs used in high-dose animal studies stimulates the recruitment and activation of
32 macrophages and polymorphonuclear leukocytes that can produce ROS through the
33 activity of NADPH oxidase on their cell membranes. Developing an understanding of
34 the oxidative stress/NF-κB pathway for EMP-mediated inflammation and the interplay
35 between exposure-induced oxidant production, host antioxidant defenses, and inter-
36 individual or species variability in defenses may be very important for developing
37 appropriate risk assessments of inhaled EMPs [Donaldson and Tran 2002].

38 39 40 *1.6.4.4 Studies Comparing EMPs from Amphiboles with Asbestiform versus* 41 *Nonasbestiform Habits*

42
43 Smith et al. [1979] compared tumor induction after IP injection in hamsters of two
44 asbestiform tremolites, two nonasbestiform prismatic tremolitic talcs, and one tremolitic

1 talc of uncertain asbestiform status. No tumors were observed following the non-
2 asbestiform tremolite challenge, in contrast to the asbestiform tremolites. However,
3 tumors were observed from the tremolitic talc of uncertain amphibole status. In rule-
4 making, OSHA [1992] noted the small number of animals in the study, the early death of
5 many animals, and the lack of systematic characterization of particle size and aspect
6 ratio. Subsequent analyses (by chemical composition) performed on the nonasbestiform
7 tremolitic talc from the study, which was not associated with mesothelioma, found 13%
8 of particles had at least a 3:1 aspect ratio [Wylie et al. 1993]. A prismatic,
9 nonasbestiform tremolitic talc and an asbestiform tremolite from the study were analyzed
10 for aspect ratio [Campbell et al. 1979]. They analyzed 200 particles of the asbestiform
11 tremolite sample and found 17% had an aspect ratio of 3:1 or greater and 9.5% had an
12 aspect ratio greater than 10:1. Analysis of 200 particles of the prismatic tremolite found
13 2.5% had an aspect ratio of 3:1 or greater and 0.5% (one particle) had an aspect ratio
14 greater than 10:1.

15
16 Wagner et al. [1982] challenged rats by IP injection using tremolite asbestos, a prismatic
17 non-asbestiform tremolite, or a tremolitic talc considered non-asbestiform containing a
18 limited number of long fibers. Only the tremolite asbestos produced tumors;
19 mesothelioma was found in 14 of 47 animals. The authors speculated that tumor rate
20 may have risen further if the testing period had not been shortened due to infection-
21 induced mortality. On a per microgram of injected dose basis, the asbestiform sample
22 contained 3.3×10^4 non-fibrous particles, 15.5×10^4 fibers, and 56.1×10^3 fibers $>8 \mu\text{m}$
23 long and $<1.5 \mu\text{m}$ wide. Corresponding values for the prismatic amphibole were $20.7 \times$
24 10^4 , 4.8×10^4 , and 0. Tremolitic talc values were 6.9×10^4 , 5.1×10^4 , and 1.7×10^3 .
25 Infection-reduced survival prevented evaluation of a crocidolite-exposed positive control.

26
27 Another IP injection study with the rat used six samples of tremolite of different
28 morphological types [Davis et al. 1991]. For three asbestiform samples, mesothelioma
29 occurred in 100%, 97%, and 97% of the animals, at corresponding doses of 13.4×10^9
30 fibers / 121×10^6 fibers with length $>8 \mu\text{m}$ and diameter $<0.25 \mu\text{m}$; 2.1×10^9 / 8×10^6 ;
31 and 7.8×10^9 / 48×10^6 , respectively. For an Italian tremolite from a non-asbestos source
32 and containing relatively few asbestiform fibers (1.0×10^9 / 1×10^6), mesothelioma was
33 found in two-thirds of the animals, with delayed expression. For two nonasbestiform
34 tremolites (0.9×10^9 / 0; 0.4×10^9 / 0), tumors were found in 12% and 5% of the animals,
35 respectively; at least the former was above expected background levels. The Italian
36 sample resulting in 67% mesothelioma incidence contained only one-third the number of
37 EMPs $>8 \mu\text{m}$ long compared to the nonasbestiform sample associated with 12%
38 mesothelioma, and those two samples contained an approximately equal number of fibers
39 with length $>8 \mu\text{m}$ and width $<0.5 \mu\text{m}$. The preparation of the three asbestiform samples
40 and the Italian sample were essentially identical. However, the two nonasbestiform
41 samples associated with low mesothelioma incidence required significantly different pre-
42 treatment, the first requiring multiple washing and sedimentation and the second grinding
43 under water in a micronizing mill. It was noted that those two nonasbestiform samples
44 and the Italian sample contained minor components of long, thin asbestiform tremolite

1 fibers. This study suggested that carcinogenicity may not depend simply on the number
2 of EMPs and called for methods of distinguishing “carcinogenic tremolite fibers” from
3 non-fibrous tremolite dusts that contain similar numbers of EMPs of similar aspect ratios
4 [Davis et al. 1991]. It has been suggested that the response observed for the Italian
5 tremolite is of a pattern expected for a low dose of highly carcinogenic asbestos tremolite
6 [Addison 2007].

7
8 A recent review of past studies of varieties of tremolite and the limitations of earlier
9 studies (e.g., their use of injection or implantation versus inhalation) suggested that,
10 based on observed differences in the carcinogenicity of tremolite asbestos and
11 nonasbestiform prismatic tremolite, differences in carcinogenicity of amphibole asbestos
12 fibers and nonasbestiform amphibole cleavage fragments are sufficiently large to be
13 discernable even with the study limitations, and that there is evidence of a lower hazard
14 associated with the shorter, thicker cleavage fragments of the nonasbestiform amphiboles
15 in comparison with the thinner asbestos fibers [Addison and McConnell 2007].

16
17 In summary, several types of animal studies have been conducted to assess the
18 carcinogenicity and fibrogenicity of asbestiform and nonasbestiform tremolite fibers and
19 other EMPs. Tremolite asbestos was found to be both fibrogenic and carcinogenic in rats
20 by inhalation. However, the data for other particle forms of tremolite and for other
21 amphiboles in general is much more limited, and is based primarily on mesotheliomas
22 produced by intrapleural administration studies in rats. These studies bypass the lung
23 entirely, and thus provide no information on the test material's potential for causing lung
24 tumors. In addition, they have often been criticized for employing a non-physiological
25 route of administration. Some of the older studies [Smith et al. 1979; Wagner et al. 1982]
26 are difficult to interpret due to inadequate characterization of the tremolite preparation
27 that was used, although the studies do tend to show fewer tumors from prismatic
28 tremolite than from asbestiform tremolite. Unfortunately, doses used in most animal
29 studies are generally reported in terms of mass (e.g., 10, 25, or 40 mg/rat). Unless the
30 test preparations are well characterized in terms of fiber counts and fiber size
31 distributions, it is difficult to relate the mass-based dose in the animals to fiber count
32 measurements used to assess human occupational exposures. Where semi-quantitative
33 fiber count and size distribution data are given, as in the Davis et al. [1991] study, it is
34 evident that the prismatic tremolite samples contain fewer countable fibers per 10mg dose
35 than the asbestiform tremolite samples. Although the prismatic tremolite samples clearly
36 generated fewer mesotheliomas than the asbestiform tremolite samples, it is not apparent
37 whether the tumorigenic potency per fiber is lower for the nonasbestiform tremolites.

38
39 Cellular *in vitro* assays used LDH release, beta-glucuronidase release, cytotoxicity, and
40 giant cell formation to compare two non-asbestiform and one asbestiform tremolites,
41 finding relative toxicities parallel to the differences seen in an *in vivo* rat IP injection
42 study of tumorigenicity using the same samples [Wagner et al. 1982]. *In vitro* cellular or
43 organ tissue culture studies showed squamous metaplasia and increased DNA synthesis
44 in tracheal explant cultures treated with long glass fibers or with crocidolite or chrysotile

1 fibers, while cleavage fragments from their nonasbestiform analogues, riebeckite and
2 antigorite, were not active [Woodworth et al. 1983]. For alveolar macrophages *in vitro*,
3 crocidolite fibers induced the release of ROS an order of magnitude greater than cleavage
4 fragments from nonasbestiform riebeckite [Hansen and Mossman 1987]. Similar
5 differences were observed in hamster tracheal cells for:

- 6 • induction of ornithine decarboxylase, an enzyme associated with mouse skin cell
7 proliferation and tumor promotion [Marsh and Mossman 1988];
- 8 • stimulating survival or proliferation in a colony-forming assay using those
9 hamster tracheal epithelial cells [Sesko and Mossman 1989];
- 10 • activation of proto-oncogenes in tracheal epithelial and pleural mesothelial cells
11 *in vitro* [Janssen et al. 1994]; and
- 12 • cytotoxicity [Mossman and Sesko 1990].

13
14 A recent review concludes that a large body of work shows that asbestos fibers have been
15 most active in a number of *in vitro* bioassays comparing activities of a variety of asbestos
16 fibers and other nonpathogenic fibers or particles, while cleavage fragments of
17 amphiboles are less potent than asbestos fibers [Mossman 2007].

18
19 These are a fraction of the extensive number of studies that have provided detailed
20 information on some of the biomolecular mechanisms induced in cells by EMP exposure,
21 suggesting some bases underlying applied questions of relative toxicities and
22 pathogenicities of asbestiform and nonasbestiform EMPs. Seemingly contradictory
23 implications between some experiments suggest that new methods for preparation and
24 characterization of EMPs may be needed. Also, careful attempts to identify *in vitro* and
25 *in vivo* conditions which may unexpectedly influence the initiation or promotion of cell
26 damage and progression to disease may aid the further elucidation of EMP properties and
27 conditions of exposure determining disease risk.

28
29 The number of animal model *in vivo* studies of nonasbestiform amphibole dusts is
30 limited. To date this research has found generally significant differences in pathogenicity
31 between nonasbestiform and asbestiform amphiboles. Within these studies, there are few
32 findings of biological effects or tumorigenicity induced by samples classified as
33 nonasbestiform, and there are rational hypotheses as to the cause of those effects. There
34 are general fundamental uncertainties concerning EMP properties and biological
35 mechanisms that determine mineral particle toxicities and pathogenicities, and
36 specifically concerning the similarities or differences in disease mechanisms between
37 EMPs from asbestiform versus nonasbestiform amphiboles. *In vitro* studies have
38 generally found differences in specific toxic activities between some asbestiform and
39 nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs, although *in vitro* systems are not yet able to predict
40 relative pathogenic risk for mineral fibers and other EMPs. This suggests a focus of
41 research to identify if and when nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs are active for
42 tumorigenicity or other pathology, if there is a threshold for those activities, and if
43 distinguishing conditions or properties that determine such pathogenicity can be found.

1
2 Research needs include the selection and storing of nonasbestiform amphibole samples
3 and the selection of parallel asbestiform samples of the same mineral. This involves
4 subsidiary questions of which properties to match and if such matches can be made (e.g.,
5 cleavage fragment dimensions versus fiber dimensions). To accomplish this research,
6 exhaustive characterization of the samples including contaminants is necessary. Detailed
7 characterization of particle characteristics that may affect biological activities (e.g.,
8 surface composition, durability, morphology, and surface properties) are needed under
9 conditions of incubation in pulmonary extracellular and intracellular media so they model
10 *in vivo* conditions. This research focus would conform with the general strategies and
11 tactics that have been recommended by several expert panels for clarifying the risks and
12 causes of asbestos exposure-associated diseases, and with the current effort of the U.S.
13 Federal Government Interagency Asbestos Working Group (IAWG), involving
14 participation of the EPA, USGS, NIOSH, ATSDR, CPSC, OSHA, MSHA, and the
15 NIEHS/NTP, to identify Federal research needs and possible actions regarding asbestos
16 fibers and other durable EMPs of public health concern [Vu et al. 1996; ILSI 2005;
17 Schins 2002; Greim 2004; Mossman et al. 2007].
18
19

20 **1.6.5 Thresholds**

21
22 Discussions of thresholds for adverse health effects associated with exposure to asbestos
23 fibers and related EMPs have focused on the characteristics of dimension, including
24 length, width, and the derived aspect ratio, as well as concentration. Although other
25 particle characteristics discussed above may impact these thresholds, or may have
26 thresholds of their own that impact the toxicity of EMPs, they are not well discussed in
27 the literature. The following discussion is focused on thresholds for dimension and
28 concentration.
29

30 The seminal work of Stanton et al. [1981] laid the foundation for much of the information
31 on dimensional thresholds. Their analyses found that malignant neoplasms in exposed
32 rats were best predicted by the number of EMPs longer than 8 μm and thinner than 0.25
33 μm . However, the number of EMPs in other size categories having lengths greater than 4
34 μm and widths up to 1.5 μm were also highly correlated with malignant neoplasms.
35 Lippmann [1988, 1990] reviewed the literature and suggested that lung cancer is most
36 closely associated with asbestos fibers longer than 10 μm and thicker than 0.15 μm , while
37 mesothelioma is most closely associated with asbestos fibers longer than 5 μm and
38 thinner than 0.1 μm . Evidence from animal studies and some *in vitro* studies suggests
39 that short asbestos fibers (e.g., <5 μm long) may play a role in fibrosis, but are of lesser
40 concern than longer asbestos fibers for cancer development.
41

42 Berman et al. [1995] statistically analyzed aggregate data from 13 inhalation studies in
43 which rats were exposed to 9 types of asbestos (4 chrysotiles, 3 amosites, a crocidolite,
44 and a tremolite asbestos) to assess fiber dimension and mineralogy as predictors of lung

1 tumor and mesothelioma risks. Archived samples from the studies were reanalyzed to
2 provide detailed information on each asbestos structure, including mineralogy (i.e.,
3 chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, or tremolite), size (i.e., length and width, each in 5
4 categories), type (i.e., fiber, bundle, cluster, or matrix), and complexity (i.e., number of
5 identifiable components of a cluster or matrix). Multiple concentrations (each for
6 asbestos structures with different specified characteristics) were calculated for the
7 experimental exposures. While no univariate index of exposure adequately described
8 lung tumor incidence observed across all inhalation studies, certain multivariate indices
9 of exposure did adequately describe outcomes. Fibers and bundles longer than 5 μm and
10 thinner than 0.4 μm contributed to lung tumor risk; very long (≥ 40 μm) and very thick
11 (≥ 5 μm) complex clusters and matrices possibly contributed. While structures < 5 μm
12 long did not contribute to lung tumor risk, potency of thin (< 0.4 μm) structures increased
13 with increasing length above 5 μm and structures ≥ 40 μm long were estimated to be
14 about 500 times more potent than structures between 5 and 40 μm long. With respect to
15 lung tumor risk, no difference was observed between chrysotile and amphibole asbestos.
16 With respect to mesothelioma risk, chrysotile was found to be less potent than amphibole
17 asbestos. While the Berman et al. [1995] analysis was limited to studies of asbestos
18 exposure, similar statistical approaches may be adaptable to assess study outcomes from
19 exposures to a broader range of EMPs beyond asbestos.

20
21 In addressing the issue of a length threshold, the Health Effects Institute [HEI 1991]
22 concluded that asbestos fibers < 5 μm long appear to have much less carcinogenic activity
23 than longer fibers and may be relatively inactive. A panel convened by the ATSDR
24 [2003] concluded that “given findings from epidemiological studies, laboratory animal
25 studies, and *in vitro* genotoxicity studies, combined with the lung’s ability to clear short
26 fibers, the panelists agreed that there is a strong weight of evidence that asbestos and
27 SVFs shorter than 5 μm are unlikely to cause cancer in humans.” Also, an EPA [2003]
28 peer consultant panel “agreed that the available data suggest that the risk for fibers < 5 μm
29 long is very low and could be zero.” They also generally agreed that the width cut-off
30 should be between 0.5 and 1.5 μm , but deserved further analysis.

31
32 However, Dodson et al. [2003] have argued that it is difficult to rule out the involvement
33 of short (< 5 μm) asbestos fibers in causing disease because exposures to asbestos fibers
34 are overwhelmingly comprised of fibers shorter than 5 μm and fibers observed in the
35 lung and in extrapulmonary locations are also overwhelmingly shorter than 5 μm . For
36 example, in a study of malignant mesothelioma cases, Suzuki and Yuen [2002] found that
37 the majority of asbestos fibers in lung and mesothelial tissues were shorter than 5 μm .

38
39 NIOSH investigators have recently evaluated the relationship between the dimensions
40 (i.e., length and width) of airborne chrysotile fibers and risks for developing lung
41 cancer or asbestosis by updating the cohort of chrysotile-exposed textile workers
42 previously studied by Dement et al. [1994], Stayner et al. [1997], and Hein et al. [2007].
43 Archived airborne samples collected at this chrysotile textile plant were re-analyzed by
44 TEM to generate exposure estimates based on bivariate fiber-size distribution [Dement et

1 al. 2007]. TEM analysis of sampled fibers found all size-specific categories (35
2 categories were assigned based on combinations of fiber width and length) to be highly
3 statistically significant predictors of lung cancer and asbestosis [Stayner et al. 2007]. The
4 smallest fiber size-specific category was thinner than 0.25 μm and $\leq 1.5 \mu\text{m}$ long. The
5 largest size-specific category was thicker than 3.0 μm and $>40 \mu\text{m}$ long. Both lung
6 cancer and asbestosis were most strongly associated with exposures to thin fibers (<0.25
7 μm), and longer fibers ($>10 \mu\text{m}$) were found to be the strongest predictors of lung cancer.
8 A limitation of the study is that cumulative exposures for the cohort were highly
9 correlated across all fiber-size categories, which complicates the interpretation of the
10 study results.

11
12 In addition to length and width, an important parameter used to define EMPs is the aspect
13 ratio. The use of the 3:1 length:width aspect ratio as the minimum to define an EMP was
14 not established on scientific bases such as toxicity or exposure potential. Rather it was a
15 decision based on the ability of the microscopist to determine the elongated nature of a
16 particle [Holmes 1965], and the practice has been carried through to this day. As
17 bivariate analyses are conducted, attention needs to be paid to assessing the impact of
18 aspect ratio, in addition to length and width, on toxicity and health outcomes.

19
20 As discussed in Section 1.3.2, the nature of occupational exposures to asbestos has
21 changed over the last several decades. Once dominated by chronic exposures in textile
22 mills, friction product manufacturing, and cement pipe fabrication, current occupational
23 exposures to asbestos in the U.S. are primarily occurring during maintenance activities or
24 remediation of buildings containing asbestos. These current occupational exposure
25 scenarios frequently involve short-term, intermittent exposures. The generally lower
26 current exposures give added significance to the question of whether or not there is an
27 asbestos exposure threshold below which workers would incur no risk of adverse health
28 outcomes.

29
30 Risk assessments of workers occupationally exposed to asbestos were reviewed by
31 investigators sponsored by the Health Effects Institute [1991]. They found that dose-
32 specific risk is highly dependent on how the measurement of dose (exposure) was
33 determined. A common problem with many of the epidemiological studies of workers
34 exposed to asbestos was the quality of the exposure data. Few studies have good
35 historical exposure data and those data which were available are mostly area samples
36 with concentrations reported as millions of particles per cubic foot of air (mppcf).
37 Although correction factors were used to convert exposures measured in mppcf to f/cm^3 ,
38 the conversions were often based on more recent exposure measurements collected at
39 concentrations lower than those prevalent in earlier years. In addition, a single
40 conversion factor was typically used to estimate exposures throughout a facility, which
41 may not accurately represent differences in particle sizes and counts at different processes
42 in the facility.

43

1 More recently, the concept of a concentration threshold has been reviewed by Hodgson
2 and Darnton [2000]. It is generally accepted that lung fibrosis requires relatively heavy
3 exposure to asbestos and that the carcinogenic response of the lung may be an extension
4 of the same inflammatory processes that produce lung fibrosis. Some evidence for a
5 threshold is provided by an analysis of a chrysotile-exposed cohort, which suggests a
6 potential threshold dose of about 30 f/mL-yr to produce radiologically evident fibrosis
7 [Weill 1994]. Another study of necropsy material from textile workers exposed to
8 chrysotile shows a distinct step increase in fibrosis for exposures in the 20–30 f/mL-yr
9 range [Green et al. 1997]. However, a study of textile mill workers exposed to chrysotile
10 did not find evidence for significant concentration thresholds for either asbestosis or lung
11 cancer [Stayner et al. 1997]. Hodgson and Darnton [2000] pointed out that any evidence
12 suggesting a threshold for chrysotile would likely not apply to amphibole asbestos
13 because radiologically evident fibrosis has been documented among workers exposed to
14 amphibole asbestos at low levels (<5 f/mL-yr). They concluded that if a concentration
15 threshold exists for amphiboles, it is very low.

16
17 For mesothelioma, Hodgson and Darnton [2000] identified cohorts with high rates of
18 mesothelioma at levels of exposure below those at which increased lung cancer has been
19 identified; in some studies, the proportion of mesothelioma cases with no likely asbestos
20 exposure is much higher than expected. Hodgson and Darnton [2000] concluded that
21 these studies support a non-zero risk, even from brief, low-level exposures.

22
23 Animal studies using intraperitoneal and intrapleural injection of asbestos fibers cited by
24 Ilgren and Browne [1991] suggest a possible threshold concentration for mesothelioma.
25 However, it is not clear how this would be useful to determine a threshold for inhalation
26 exposure in humans.

27 28 29 **1.7 Analytical Methods**

30
31 Available analytical methods can characterize the size, morphology, elemental
32 composition, crystal structure, and surface composition of individual particles of
33 “thoracic” size. There are two separate paradigms for selecting among these methods for
34 their use or further development for application to EMPs: one is for their support of
35 standardized surveys or compliance assessments of workplace exposures to EMPs;
36 another is for their support of research to identify physicochemical properties of EMPs
37 that are critical to predicting toxicity or pathogenic potential for lung fibrosis, cancer, or
38 mesothelioma.

39
40 Cost, time, availability, standardization requirements, and other pragmatic factors limit
41 the selection of analytical methods for standardized analysis of field samples for the first
42 set of uses. Additionally, those uses require methods with an historic established
43 association with disease risk. Principal among these analyses for standardized industrial
44 hygiene use is an optical microscopy method — PCM (e.g., the NIOSH 7400 Method or

1 equivalent) [NIOSH 1994a]. Under the current NIOSH REL for airborne asbestos fibers,
2 particles are counted if they are EMPs of the covered minerals and they are longer than 5
3 μm when viewed microscopically using NIOSH Analytical Method 7400 or its
4 equivalent.

5
6 Care should be taken in developing or applying new analytical methods to the analysis of
7 asbestos for standardized and compliance assessments. The use of new or different
8 analytical methods to assess exposures must be carefully evaluated and validated to
9 ensure that they measure exposures covered by the health protection standard.

10 11 12 ***1.7.1 NIOSH Sampling and Analytical Methods for Standardized Industrial Hygiene*** 13 ***Surveys***

14
15 The analytical components of NIOSH's REL for asbestos exposure take on substantial
16 significance because the current REL was set on the basis of the limit of quantification
17 (LOQ) of the PCM method using a 400-L sample, rather than solely on estimates of the
18 health risk. Had a lower LOQ been possible, a lower REL may have been proposed to
19 further reduce the risk of occupational cancer among asbestos-exposed workers. With
20 the change from an 8-hour TWA to a 100-minute TWA, and advances in sampling pump
21 capabilities, using sampling pumps at the 16 L/min maximum flow-rate of the method for
22 100 minutes provides a 1600-L sample, which would allow quantitation of about 0.04
23 f/cm^3 , provided there is not excessive interference from other dust.

24
25 PCM was designated as the principal analytical method for applying the REL because it
26 was thought to be the most practical and reliable available method. The particle counting
27 rules specified for PCM analysis of air samples result in an index of exposure which has
28 been used with human health data for risk assessment. As an index of exposure for
29 airborne asbestos fibers, PCM-based counts do not enumerate all EMPs because very thin
30 particles, such as asbestos fibrils, are typically not visible by PCM when using NIOSH
31 Analytical Method 7400.

32
33 Several fundamental difficulties are known in using the PCM method as an index for
34 occupational exposure to asbestos. The ratio of countable EPs to the total number of EPs
35 collected on air samples can vary for samples collected within the same workplace, as
36 well as between different workplaces where the same or different asbestos materials are
37 handled [Dement and Wallingford 1990]. The result of this is that equivalent PCM
38 asbestos exposure concentrations determined at different work places would be
39 considered to pose the same health risk, when, in fact, those risks may be substantially
40 different due to unknown amounts of unobserved fibers on the samples.

41
42 It is commonly stated that particles thinner than about 0.25 μm typically cannot be
43 observed with PCM because they are below the resolution limits of the microscope.
44 However, the results for PCM counts may also vary depending on the index of refraction

1 of the EMP (e.g., asbestos variety) being examined. When the index of refraction of the
2 particle is similar to that of the filter substrate, the ability to resolve particles is less than
3 when the refractive index of the particle differs from that of the substrate [Kenny and
4 Rood 1987]. Also, particles thinner than 0.25 μm can be resolved with high-quality
5 microscopes; chrysotile fibers as thin as 0.15 μm can be resolved [Rooker et al. 1982].
6 Thus, “fiber” counts made with PCM may vary between microscopes and the differences
7 may vary depending on the type of asbestos.

8
9 Another aspect of NIOSH Method 7400 is that two sets of counting rules are specified
10 depending on the type of fiber analysis. The rules for counting particles for asbestos
11 determination, referred to as the “A” rules, instruct the microscopist to count EPs of any
12 width that are longer than 5 μm and have an aspect ratio of at least 3:1. However, EPs
13 wider than 3 μm are not likely to reach the thoracic region of the lung when inhaled. The
14 “B” counting rules, which are used to evaluate airborne exposure to other fibers, specify
15 that only EPs thinner than 3 μm and longer than 5 μm should be counted [NIOSH
16 1994a]. The European Union is moving toward a standardized PCM method for
17 evaluating asbestos exposures using counting rules recommended by the World Health
18 Organization (WHO), which specify counting only EPs thinner than 3 μm and with a 3:1
19 or larger aspect ratio [WHO 1997; European Parliament and Council 2003].
20
21

22 ***1.7.2 Analytical Methods for Research***

23
24 For research purposes, it may be important for a more expansive set of analyses to be
25 considered. Optical microscopes have a limit of spatial resolution of about 0.2 μm .
26 However, EMPs thinner than 0.2 μm are thought to be important etiologic agents for
27 disease, so other detection and measurement methods must be used to investigate the
28 relationship between fiber dimension and disease outcomes.

29
30 TEM has much greater resolving power than optical microscopy, on the order of 0.001
31 μm . Additionally, TEM has the ability to semi-quantitatively determine elemental
32 composition by using EDS. Incident electrons excite electronic states of atoms of the
33 sample, and the atoms decay that excess energy either by emitting an X-ray of frequency
34 specific to the element (X-ray spectroscopy) or by releasing a secondary electron with
35 equivalent kinetic energy (an Auger electron). Furthermore, TEM can provide some
36 level of electron diffraction (ED) analysis of particle mineralogy by producing a mineral-
37 specific diffraction pattern based on the regular arrangement of the particle’s crystal
38 structure [Egerton 2005].
39

40 The greater spatial resolving power and the crystallographic analysis abilities of TEM
41 and TEM-ED are used in some cases for standardized workplace industrial hygiene
42 characterizations. TEM methods (e.g., NIOSH 7402) are used to complement PCM in
43 cases where there is apparent ambiguity in EMP identification [NIOSH 1994b] and under
44 the Asbestos Hazardous Emergency Response Act of 1986, the EPA requires that TEM

1 analysis be used to ensure the effective removal of asbestos from schools [EPA 1987].
2 Each of these methods employs specific criteria for defining and counting visualized
3 fibers, and report different counts of fibers for a given sample. This can be addressed by
4 using counting and recording criteria which retain a greater level of raw data. These data
5 subsequently can be independently interpreted according to different definitional criteria,
6 such as those developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO),
7 which provides methods ISO 10312 and ISO 13794 [ISO 1995, 1999].
8

9 Improved analytical methods that have become widely available should be re-evaluated
10 for complementary research applications or for ease of applicability to field samples.
11 Scanning electron microscopy (SEM) is now generally available in research labs and
12 commercial analytical service labs. SEM resolution is on the order of ten times that of
13 optical microscopy, and newly commercial Field Emission SEM (FESEM) can improve
14 this resolution to about 0.01 μm or better, near that of TEM. SEM-EDS and SEM-
15 Wavelength Dispersive Spectrometers (WDS) can identify the elemental composition of
16 particles. It is not clear that SEM-backscatter electron diffraction analysis can be adapted
17 to crystallographic analyses equivalent to TEM-ED capability. Ease of sample collection
18 and preparation for SEM analysis compared to TEM, and some SEM advantage in
19 visualizing fields of EMPs and EMP morphology, suggest that SEM methods should be
20 re-evaluated for EMP analyses both for field sample analyses and for research [Goldstein
21 2003].
22

23 Research on mechanisms of EMP toxicity includes concerns for surface-associated
24 factors. To support this research, elemental surface analyses can be performed by
25 scanning Auger spectroscopy on individual particles with widths near the upper end of
26 SEM resolution. In scanning Auger spectroscopy, the Auger electrons stimulated by an
27 incident electron beam are detected; the energy of these secondary electrons is low,
28 which permits only secondary electrons from near-surface atoms to escape and be
29 analyzed, thus analyzing the particle elemental composition to a depth of only one or a
30 few atomic layers [Egerton 2005]. This method has been used in some pertinent research
31 studies (e.g., assessing effects on toxicity of leaching Mg from chrysotile fiber surfaces)
32 [Keane et al. 1999]. Currently, this form of analysis is time-consuming and not ideal for
33 the routine analysis of samples collected from field studies.
34

35 Surface elemental composition and limited valence state information on surface-borne
36 elements can be obtained by X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy (XPS or ESCA), albeit
37 not for individual particles. XPS uses X-ray excitation of the sample, rather than electron
38 excitation as used in SEM-EDS or TEM-EDS. The X-rays excite sample atom electrons
39 to higher energy states, which then can decay by emission of photoelectrons. XPS
40 detects these element-specific photoelectron energies, which are weak and therefore
41 emitted only near the sample surface, similar to the case of Auger electron surface
42 spectroscopy. In contrast to scanning Auger spectroscopy, XPS can in some cases
43 provide not only elemental but also valence state information on atoms near the sample
44 surface. However, in XPS the exciting X-rays cannot be finely focused on individual

1 fibers, so analysis is made of a small area larger than single particle size [Watts and
2 Wolstenholme 2003]. Thus, analysis of a mixed-composition dust sample would be
3 confounded, so XPS is applicable only to some selected or prepared homogeneous
4 materials or to pure field samples.

5
6
7 ***1.7.3 Differential Counting and Other Proposed Analytical Approaches for***
8 ***Differentiating EMPs***
9

10 The use of PCM to determine concentrations of airborne fibers from asbestos minerals
11 cannot ensure exclusion of EMPs from nonasbestiform minerals. Reliable and
12 reproducible analytical methods are not available for air samples to distinguish between
13 asbestos fibers and EMPs from nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals. The
14 lack of reliable and validated analytical methods that can make these distinctions on
15 individual fibers in air samples is clearly a major limitation in applying the airborne
16 asbestos fiber definitions of Federal agencies.

17
18 A technique referred to as “differential counting,” suggested as an approach to
19 differentiate between asbestiform and nonasbestiform EMPs, is mentioned in a non-
20 mandatory appendix to the OSHA asbestos standard. That appendix points out that the
21 differential counting technique requires “a great deal of experience” and is “discouraged
22 unless legally necessary.” It relies heavily on subjective judgment and does not appear to
23 be commonly used except for samples from mines. In this technique, EMPs that the
24 microscopist judges as nonasbestiform (e.g., having the appearance of cleavage
25 fragments) are not counted; any EMPs not clearly distinguishable as either asbestos or
26 nonasbestos using differential counting are to be counted as asbestos fibers. One effect
27 of using differential counting is to introduce an additional source of variability in the
28 particle counts caused by different “reading” tendencies between microscopists. The
29 technique has not been formally validated and has not been recommended by NIOSH.

30
31 For counting airborne asbestos fibers in mines and quarries, ASTM has proposed
32 “discriminatory counting” that incorporates the concepts of differential counting. The
33 proposed method uses PCM and TEM in a tiered scheme. Air samples are first analyzed
34 by PCM and, if fiber concentrations are greater than one-half the MSHA permissible
35 exposure limit (PEL) but less than the PEL, discriminatory counting is then performed.
36 Discriminatory counts are restricted to fiber bundles, fibers longer than 10 μm , and fibers
37 thinner than 1.0 μm . If the initial PCM count exceeds the PEL, TEM is performed to
38 determine an equivalent PCM count of regulated asbestos fibers only. If the
39 discriminatory count is at least 50% of the initial fiber count, TEM is performed to
40 determine an equivalent PCM count of regulated asbestos fibers only. These results are
41 then compared to regulatory limits [ASTM 2006].

42
43 ASTM has begun an interlaboratory study (ILS#174) to determine the interlaboratory
44 precision of “binning” fibers into different classes based on morphology [Harper et al.

1 2007]. The first part of the validation process was to evaluate ground samples of massive
2 or coarsely crystalline amphiboles and samples from a taconite mine which have
3 amphibole particulates characterized as cleavage fragments. Almost none of the
4 observed particles met the Class 1 criteria (i.e., potentially asbestiform based on curved
5 particles and/or bundle of fibrils). Many particles were classified as Class 2 (i.e.,
6 potentially asbestiform based on length >10 µm or width <1 µm), although their
7 morphology suggested they were more likely cleavage fragments. Using alternative
8 criteria for Class 2 (length >10 µm and width <1 µm), the number of Class 2 particles
9 was greatly reduced. However, evidence from the literature [Dement et al. 1976; Griffis
10 et al. 1983; Wylie et al. 1985; Siegrist and Wylie 1980; Beckett and Jarvis 1979; Myojo
11 1999] indicates that as much as 50% of airborne asbestos fibers are <10 µm long. The
12 proportion of asbestos fibers in the length “bin” bracketed by 5 µm and 10 µm were also
13 quite large (about 30%), and the adoption of Class 2 criteria as length >10 µm and width
14 <1 µm would cause this proportion of asbestos fibers to be classified as nonasbestiform
15 [Harper et al. 2008b].

16
17 Other procedures have been suggested with the intent of ensuring that the counts on air
18 samples do not include cleavage fragments [IMA-NA 2005; NSSGA 2005]. These
19 procedures include reviewing available geological information and/or results from
20 analysis of bulk materials to establish that asbestos is present in the sampled
21 environment, or specifying dimensional criteria to establish that airborne particulates
22 have population characteristics typical of asbestos fibers (e.g., mean particle aspect ratios
23 exceeding 20:1).

24
25 For research purposes, it is critically important that an analytical method that is able to
26 clearly discriminate between asbestiform and nonasbestiform EMPs be developed,
27 validated, and used. Whether any of these suggested procedures would ensure adequate
28 health protection for exposed workers is unclear, and the practical issues associated with
29 implementing these supplemental procedures are also undetermined.

30 31 32 **1.8 The 1990 Recommendation for Occupational Exposure to Asbestos**

33
34 The NIOSH REL for asbestos has been described in NIOSH publications and in formal
35 comments and testimony submitted to the Department of Labor. The recommendation
36 was based on the Institute’s understanding in 1990 of potential hazards, the ability of the
37 analytical methods to distinguish and count fibers, and the prevailing mineral definitions
38 used to describe covered minerals.

39 40 41 **18.1 Comments to OSHA [NIOSH 1990a]**

42
43 *The NIOSH definition of minerals to be included in the regulatory standard for*
44 *asbestos is as follows:*

1
2 *Asbestos is defined as chrysotile, crocidolite, amosite (cummingtonite-grunerite),*
3 *anthophyllite, tremolite, and actinolite. The nonasbestiform habits of the*
4 *serpentine minerals antigorite and lizardite, and the amphibole minerals*
5 *contained in the series cummingtonite-grunerite, tremolite-ferroactinolite, and*
6 *glaucophane-riebeckite shall also be included provided they meet the criteria for*
7 *a fiber as ascertained on a microscopic level. A fiber is defined as a particle with*
8 *an aspect ratio of 3:1 or larger and having a length >5 μm.*
9

10 *The determinations of airborne fiber concentrations are made microscopically*
11 *and can be determined using NIOSH Method 7400 [PCM], or its equivalent. In*
12 *those cases when asbestos and other mineral fibers occur in the same*
13 *environment, then Method 7400 can be supplemented by the use of NIOSH*
14 *Method 7402 [TEM], or its equivalent, to improve specificity of the mineral*
15 *determination.*
16

17 18 **1.8.2 Testimony at OSHA Public Meeting [NIOSH 1990b]** 19

20 *NIOSH has attempted to incorporate the appropriate mineralogical nomenclature*
21 *in its recommended standard for asbestos and recommends the following to be*
22 *adopted for regulating exposures to asbestos:*
23

24 *The current NIOSH asbestos recommended exposure limit is 100,000 fibers*
25 *greater than 5 micrometers in length per cubic meter of air, as determined in a*
26 *sample collected over any 100-minute period at a flow rate of 4L/min. This*
27 *airborne fiber count can be determined using NIOSH Method 7400, or equivalent.*
28 *In those cases when mixed fiber types occur in the same environment, then*
29 *Method 7400 can be supplemented with electron microscopy, using electron*
30 *diffraction and microchemical analyses to improve specificity of the fiber*
31 *determination. NIOSH Method 7402 ... provides a qualitative technique for*
32 *assisting in the asbestos fiber determinations. Using these NIOSH microscopic*
33 *methods, or equivalent, airborne asbestos fibers are defined, by reference, as*
34 *those particles having (1) an aspect ratio of 3 to 1 or greater; and (2) the*
35 *mineralogical characteristics (that is, the crystal structure and elemental*
36 *composition) of the asbestos minerals and their nonasbestiform analogs. The*
37 *asbestos minerals are defined as chrysotile, crocidolite, amosite (cummingtonite-*
38 *grunerite), anthophyllite, tremolite, and actinolite. In addition, airborne cleavage*
39 *fragments³ from the nonasbestiform habits of the serpentine minerals antigorite*

³ NIOSH intended the term “cleavage fragment” to include all elongated particles from the nonasbestiform habits of the specified serpentine minerals and amphibole minerals. This includes more particle types, such as acicular and prismatic crystals, than the more restrictive meaning of “cleavage fragments” used by mineralogists.

1 *and lizardite, and the amphibole minerals contained in the series cummingtonite-*
2 *grunerite, tremolite-ferroactinolite, and glaucophane-riebeckite shall also be*
3 *counted as fibers provided they meet the criteria for a fiber when viewed*
4 *microscopically.*

7 **1.8.3 Clarification of the NIOSH Recommended Exposure Limit**

8
9 As described in the preceding sections, uncertainty remains concerning the adverse health
10 effects that may be caused by nonasbestiform EMPs encompassed by NIOSH since 1990
11 in the REL for asbestos. In addition, current analytical methods still cannot reliably
12 differentiate between fibers from the asbestos minerals and other EMPs in mixed-dust
13 environments. NIOSH recognizes that its descriptions of the REL since 1990 have
14 created confusion and caused many to infer that the additional covered minerals were
15 included by NIOSH in its definition of “asbestos.” NIOSH wishes to make clear that
16 such nonasbestiform minerals are not “asbestos” or “asbestos minerals.” NIOSH also
17 wishes to minimize any potential future confusion by no longer referring to particles from
18 the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals as “asbestos fibers.” However, as
19 the following clarified REL makes clear, particles that meet the specified dimensional
20 criteria remain countable under the REL for the reasons stated above, even if they are
21 derived from the nonasbestiform analogs of the asbestos minerals.

22
23
24 Using terms defined in this *Roadmap*, the NIOSH REL is now clarified as follows:

25
26 **NIOSH's REL** for airborne asbestos fibers and related elongated mineral particles
27 (EMPs) is 0.1 EMPs from one or more covered minerals per cubic centimeter averaged
28 over 100 minutes, where:

- 29 ● an *elongated mineral particle (EMP)* is any fiber or fragment of a mineral longer
30 than 5 µm with a minimum aspect ratio of 3:1 when viewed microscopically using
31 NIOSH Analytical Method #7400 (‘A’ rules) or its equivalent; and
- 32 ● a *covered mineral* is any mineral having the crystal structure and elemental
33 composition of: one of the asbestos varieties (chrysotile, riebeckite asbestos
34 [crocidolite], cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos [amosite], anthophyllite asbestos,
35 tremolite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos) or one of their nonasbestiform analogs
36 (the serpentine minerals antigorite and lizardite, and the amphibole minerals
37 contained in the cummingtonite-grunerite mineral series, the tremolite-
38 ferroactinolite mineral series, and the glaucophane-riebeckite mineral series).

39
40 In evaluating occupational exposures against the REL, this clarification of the NIOSH
41 REL for airborne asbestos fibers and related EMPs results in *no change* in evaluated
42 counts. However, it clarifies definitionally that EMPs included in the count are not
43 necessarily asbestos fibers

1
2 The existing NIOSH REL established in 1990 remains subject to change as future
3 research sheds new light on the toxicity of nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs covered by
4 the REL and on the toxicity of other EMPs outside the range of those minerals currently
5 covered by the REL. Also, due to the change from using optical methods for
6 identification of minerals to a chemistry-based nomenclature, and subsequent changes in
7 the specific nomenclature of amphibole minerals based on elemental ratios, a more
8 extensive clarification of specific minerals covered by the NIOSH REL is warranted.
9 That more extensive clarification of covered minerals is beyond the scope of this
10 *Roadmap*, but will be addressed through additional efforts by NIOSH to encompass
11 contemporary mineralogical terminology within the REL.
12
13

14 **1.9 Summary of Key Issues**

15

16 For fibers from the asbestos minerals, an important question that remains unanswered is
17 “What are the important dimensional and physicochemical determinants of patho-
18 genicity?” Evidence from epidemiological and animal studies suggest that the potency of
19 asbestos fibers is reduced as length decreases, but lung burden studies indicate the
20 presence of short asbestos fibers at disease sites, and positive correlations between lung
21 cancer and exposure to short asbestos fibers make it difficult to rule out a role for short
22 asbestos fibers in causing disease.
23

24 Understanding the determinants of toxicity of EMPs from varieties of asbestos minerals
25 and of erionite, a fibrous zeolite, as well as of non-elongated mineral particles such as
26 quartz, may help to elucidate some of these issues. The results of human, animal, and *in*
27 *vitro* studies performed to date on a limited number of nonasbestiform EMPs are not
28 sufficient to conclude that exposures to EMPs from this large and highly variable group
29 of minerals are not capable of causing substantial adverse health outcomes. Additional
30 data are needed to develop risk assessments. There is a general lack of occupational
31 exposure data on nonasbestiform EMPs, making it difficult to assess the range of particle
32 characteristics, including dimension, in occupational settings with exposures to
33 nonasbestiform EMPs. The few studies that have assessed biopersistence or durability
34 suggest that nonasbestiform EMPs are not as biopersistent as asbestiform fibers of the
35 same dimension, but more information is needed to systematically assess the ranges and
36 importance of biopersistence in determining toxicity. Any assessment of risk needs to
37 address the influence of dimension, so studies that systematically compare effects of
38 asbestiform and nonasbestiform particles of similar sizes from the same mineral are
39 needed for a variety of mineral types.
40

41 An important need is to identify and develop methods of analysis that can be used or
42 modified to assess exposures to EMPs that are capable of differentiating between EMPs
43 based on particle characteristics that are important in causing disease. The current PCM
44 method is inadequate for assessing the mixed-dust of exposures likely to predominate for

1 the foreseeable future, and it does not have the capability to measure the important
2 physical and chemical parameters of particles thought to be associated with toxicity. For
3 routine use in assessing compliance with regulations, the limited availability, high
4 relative cost, and long turnaround times associated with EM methods will need to be
5 addressed to provide an alternative to the PCM method. Until these issues are addressed,
6 improvements in PCM methodologies should be pursued. In epidemiological and
7 toxicological research, EM methods will need to be used to carefully characterize the
8 exposure materials. Also, the results of toxicological and epidemiological studies may
9 identify additional determinants of particle toxicity warranting evaluation to determine
10 whether they can be incorporated into sampling and analytical methods used to assess the
11 health risks of exposure to EMs.

12
13 To address these scientific issues and inform future NIOSH recommendations, a
14 framework for proposed research is presented and discussed in Section 2 of this
15 *Roadmap*.

2 FRAMEWORK FOR RESEARCH

2.1 Strategic Research Goals and Objectives

Strategic goals and objectives for a multi-disciplinary research program on mineral fibers and other EMPs are identified below. Shown in brackets following each goal and objective is the number of the section of this *Roadmap* in which the goal or objective is subsequently discussed.

I. Develop a broader understanding of the important determinants of toxicity for asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.2].

- Conduct *in vitro* studies to ascertain what physical, chemical, and surface properties influence the toxicity of asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.2.1]; and
- Conduct animal studies to ascertain what physical and chemical properties influence the toxicity of asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.2.2].

II. Develop information and knowledge on occupational exposures to asbestos fibers and other EMPs and related health outcomes [2.3].

- Assess available occupational exposure information relating to various types of asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.3.1];
- Collect and analyze available information on health outcomes associated with exposures to various types of asbestos fibers and other EMPs[2.3.2];
- Conduct selective epidemiologic studies of workers exposed to various types of asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.3.3]; and
- Improve clinical tools and practices for screening, diagnosis, treatment, and secondary prevention of diseases caused by asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.3.4].

III. Develop improved sampling and analytical methods for asbestos fibers and other EMPs [2.4].

- Reduce inter-operator and inter-laboratory variability of the current analytical methods used for asbestos fibers [2.4.1];
- Develop analytical methods with improved sensitivity to visualize thinner EMPs to ensure a more complete evaluation of airborne exposures [2.4.2];
- Develop a practical analytical method for air samples to differentiate between exposures to asbestiform fibers from the asbestos minerals and exposures to EMPs from their nonasbestiform analogs [2.4.3];
- Develop analytical methods to assess durability of EMPs [2.4.4]; and
- Develop and validate size-selective sampling methods for EMPs [2.4.5].

1
2
3 Research conducted to support these three research goals should be integrated to optimize
4 resources, facilitate the simultaneous collection of data, and ensure, to the extent feasible,
5 that the research builds toward a resolution of the key issues. Within each of the goals
6 and objectives laid out in this framework, a more detailed research program will have to
7 be developed. An aim of the research is to acquire a level of mechanistic understanding
8 that can provide the basis for developing biologically-based models for extrapolating
9 results of animal inhalation and other types of *in vivo* studies to exposure conditions
10 typically encountered in the workplace. The information gained from such research can
11 then be used by regulatory agencies and occupational health professionals to implement
12 appropriate exposure limits and programs for monitoring worker exposure and health.
13 Much of this research may be accomplished by NIOSH, other Federal agencies, or other
14 stakeholders. Any research project that is undertaken should ensure that the results can
15 be interpreted and applied within the context of other studies in the overall program and
16 lead to outcomes useful for decision-making and policy-setting.

17
18 To support the needed research, a national reference repository of samples of asbestos
19 and related minerals will be required, and a database of relevant information should be
20 developed. Minerals vary in composition and morphology by location and origin, and
21 differences within the same mineral type can be significant. Currently, no national
22 repository exists to retain, document, and distribute samples of asbestiform and
23 nonasbestiform reference minerals for research and testing. These reference samples
24 should be well-characterized research-grade materials that are made available to the
25 research community so they can be used for testing and standardization. The use of these

1 samples in research would facilitate meaningful comparisons and reduce uncertainties in
2 the interpretation of results between and among studies.

3
4 The development of a comprehensive, publicly available asbestos database that contains
5 all of the studies of the toxicity and health effects on asbestos and related minerals would
6 enhance the development of the research programs, avoid duplication of effort, and
7 interpretation of the information generated. The database should include all pertinent
8 information about the methods, doses or exposures, mineral information, particle
9 characteristics, and other information deemed pertinent.

10 11 12 **2.2 Develop a Broader Understanding of the Important Determinants of Toxicity for** 13 **Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs**

14
15 To address this objective, one of the first steps will be to identify the range of minerals
16 and mineral habits needed to systematically address the mineral characteristics that may
17 determine particle toxicity. Care must be taken to ensure that mineralogical issues in a
18 study are adequately addressed. Information on both crystalline lattice structure and
19 composition are needed to define a mineral species because information on either alone is
20 insufficient to describe the properties of a mineral. For example, nonasbestiform
21 riebeckite and asbestiform riebeckite (crocidolite) share the same elemental composition
22 but have different crystalline lattices. EMPs from nonasbestiform riebeckite are not
23 flexible. Crocidolite fibers generally have chain-width defects, which explain the
24 flexibility of crocidolite fibers. These chain-width defects also affect diffusion of cations
25 and dissolution properties, both of which can explain greater release of iron into
26 surrounding fluid by crocidolite than by nonasbestiform riebeckite [Guthrie 1997].

27
28 In addition to elemental content and crystalline lattice, the particle characteristics
29 identified by Hochella [1993] should be considered for particle characterization. For
30 example, the current paradigm for fiber pathogenicity does not discriminate between
31 different compositions of long biopersistent fibers, except in-so-far as composition
32 determines biopersistence. There are instances of two long biopersistent fiber types –
33 erionite [Wagner et al. 1985] and silicon carbide [Davis et al. 1996] that show a special
34 proclivity to cause mesothelioma for reasons that are not easily explained by the current
35 paradigm because they are not especially long or more biopersistent than the amphibole
36 asbestos minerals. The biochemical basis of the enhanced pathogenicity of these two
37 fiber types has not been elucidated. This suggests that some fiber types may possess
38 surface or chemical reactivity that imparts added pathogenicity over and above what
39 would be anticipated for long biopersistent fibers. Because of the many variations in
40 elemental content, crystalline lattice structure, and other characteristics of these minerals,
41 it will be impossible to study all variants. Therefore, a strategy will have to be developed
42 for selecting the minerals for testing. Included in this strategy should be consideration of
43 occupationally relevant minerals and habits, availability of appropriate and well-

1 characterized specimens for testing, and practical relevance of the results to be achieved
2 through testing.

3
4 EPA's Office of Pollution Prevention and Toxics, NIEHS, NIOSH, and OSHA assembled
5 an expert panel a decade ago to consider major issues in animal model chronic inhalation
6 toxicity and carcinogenicity testing of thoracic-size elongated particles. Issues
7 considered included: the design of chronic inhalation exposure of animals to EMPs;
8 preliminary studies to guide them; parallel mechanistic studies to help interpret study
9 results and to extrapolate findings to potential for human health effects; and available
10 screening tests for identifying and assigning a priority for chronic inhalation study. There
11 was general agreement that: (1) chronic inhalation studies of EMPs in the rat are the most
12 appropriate tests for predicting inhalation hazard and risk of EMPs to humans; (2) no
13 single assay and battery of short-term assays could predict the outcome of a chronic
14 inhalation bioassay for carcinogenicity; and (3) several short-term *in vitro* and *in vivo*
15 studies may be useful to assess the relative potential of various EMPs to cause lung
16 toxicity or carcinogenicity [Vu et al. 1996].

17
18 Such short-term assays and strategies were considered by an expert working group
19 assembled by the International Life Sciences Institute's Risk Science Institute to arrive at
20 a consensus on current short-term assays useful for screening EMPs for potential toxicity
21 and carcinogenicity [ILSI 2005]. Dose, dimension, durability, and possibly surface
22 reactivities were identified as critical parameters for study, while it was noted that no
23 single physicochemical property or mechanism can now be used to predict
24 carcinogenicity of all EMPs. The strategy for short-term (i.e., 3 months or less) testing in
25 animal models included: sample preparation and characterization (composition,
26 crystallinity, habit, size-distribution); testing for biopersistence *in vivo* using a standard
27 protocol such as that of the European Union [European Commission 1999]; and a sub-
28 chronic inhalation or instillation challenge of the rat with evaluation of lung weight and
29 fiber burden, bronchoalveolar lavage profile, cell proliferation, fibrosis, and
30 histopathology. Additionally, other non-routine analyses for particle surface area and
31 surface reactivities and short-term *in vitro* cellular toxicological assays might be
32 evaluated. The use of *in vitro* tests should be tempered by the observations that standard
33 protocols fail to distinguish relative pathogenic potentials of even non-elongated silicates
34 (i.e., quartz versus clay dusts) and that treatment of particle surfaces (i.e., modeling their
35 conditioning upon deposition on the lipoprotein-rich aqueous hypophase surface of the
36 deep lung) can greatly affect their expression of toxicities [ATSDR 2003].

37
38 EMPs encountered in any particular work environment are frequently heterogeneous,
39 which limits the ability of epidemiological and other types of health assessment studies to
40 evaluate the influence of EMP dimensions (length and width), chemical composition,
41 biopersistence, and other characteristics on toxicity. Toxicological testing is needed to
42 address some of the fundamental questions about EMP toxicity that cannot be determined
43 through epidemiology or other types of health assessment studies. Irrespective of study
44 type or design, the full characterization of all particulate material in a test sample is an

1 essential step in understanding the mechanisms of EMP toxicity. The determination of
2 EMP dimensions is important and best expressed as bivariate size distributions (i.e.,
3 width and length). Such determinations should be made using both relatively simple
4 procedures (optical microscopy) and highly specialized techniques (e.g., TEM or SEM
5 with EDS) because size-specific fractions of EMP exposures have both biological and
6 regulatory significance.

7
8 The chemical composition (e.g., intrinsic chemical constituents and surface chemistry) of
9 mineral fibers and other EMPs has been shown to have a direct effect on their ability to
10 persist in the lung and to interact with surrounding tissue to cause DNA damage. For
11 example, ferric and ferrous cations are major components of the crystalline lattice of
12 amphibole asbestos fibers; iron may also be present as surface impurities on chrysotile
13 asbestos fibers and other EMPs. The availability of iron at the surface of asbestos fibers
14 and other EMPs has been shown to be a critical parameter in catalyzing the generation of
15 ROS which may indirectly cause genetic damage [Kane 1996]. Also, attempted
16 clearance of long asbestos fibers from the lung causes frustrated phagocytosis, which
17 stimulates the release of ROS [Mossman and Marsh 1989]. Individual adaptive
18 responses to oxidant stress and the body's ability to repair damaged DNA are dependent
19 on multiple exogenous and endogenous factors, but few experiments have been attempted
20 to evaluate these variables in animal or human model systems. Kane [1996] has
21 suggested that the mechanisms responsible for the genotoxic effects of asbestos fibers are
22 due to indirect DNA damage mediated by free radicals and to direct physical interference
23 with the mitotic apparatus by the fibers themselves. Research to address the following
24 questions would assist in validating these proposed mechanisms:

- 25 • Are *in vitro* genotoxicity assays relevant to carcinogenesis of asbestos fibers and
26 other EMPs?
- 27 • Are *in vitro* doses relevant for *in vivo* exposures?
- 28 • Can genotoxic effects of asbestos fibers and other EMPs be assessed *in vivo*?

29
30 Macrophages are the initial target cells of EMPs and other particulates that deposit in the
31 lungs or pleural and peritoneal spaces. Phagocytosis of asbestos fibers has been shown to
32 be accompanied by the activation of macrophages, which results in the generation of
33 ROS as well as a variety of chemical mediators and cytokines [Kane 1996]. These
34 mediators amplify the local inflammatory reaction. Persistence of asbestos fibers in the
35 lung interstitium or in the sub-pleural connective tissue may lead to a sustained chronic
36 inflammatory reaction accompanied by fibrosis [Oberdorster 1994]. The unregulated or
37 persistent release of these inflammatory mediators may lead to tissue injury, scarring by
38 fibrosis, and proliferation of epithelial and mesenchymal cells. In the lungs and pleural
39 linings, chronic inflammation and fibrosis are common reactions following exposure to
40 asbestos fibers, but research is needed to understand the relationship between
41 inflammation, fibrosis, and cancer induced by asbestos fibers and other EMPs.
42

1 It has been suggested that asbestos fibers and other EMPs may contribute to
2 carcinogenesis by multiple mechanisms and that EMPs may act at multiple stages in
3 neoplastic development depending on their physicochemical composition, surface
4 reactivity, and biopersistence in the lung [Barrett 1994]. Animal inhalation studies are
5 needed to investigate the biopersistence and toxicity of asbestos fibers and other EMPs
6 representing a range of chemical compositions and morphological characteristics
7 (including crystalline habits) and representing a range of discrete lengths and widths.
8 Additional factors which should be considered and evaluated are the influence of
9 concurrent exposure to other particles and contaminants on the biopersistence and
10 toxicity of EMPs. In a recently reported short-term (5-day) animal inhalation study to
11 evaluate the biopersistence of chrysotile fibers with and without concurrent exposure to
12 joint compound particles (1-4 μm MMAD), the clearance half-time of all fiber sizes was
13 approximately an order of magnitude less for the group exposed to chrysotile and joint-
14 compound particles [Bernstein et al. 2008]. Based on histopathological examination, the
15 combination of chrysotile and fine particles accelerated the recruitment of alveolar
16 macrophages, resulting in a ten-fold decrease in the number of fibers remaining in the
17 lung. Although no mention was made of any pathological changes in the lungs of the
18 chrysotile/particulate exposed group, other studies have shown that the recruitment of
19 macrophages then increases the production and recruitment of polymorphonuclear
20 leukocytes, which themselves can generate ROS [Driscoll et al. 2002; Donaldson and
21 Tran 2002].

22
23 Much research has been focused on lung cancer and mesothelioma. Even if it is
24 determined that EMPs from some minerals have low potency for causing cancer,
25 additional studies may be needed to investigate their potential for causing inflammation,
26 fibrosis, and other nonmalignant respiratory effects. Also, the relationship between EMP
27 dimension and fibrosis should be more fully investigated. The results of such research
28 may allow currently used standard exposure indices to be modified by specifying
29 different dimensional criteria (lengths and widths) relevant to each of the disease
30 outcomes associated with EMP exposures, and by determining whether biopersistence
31 can be included as an additional criterion. However, this research is most likely
32 dependent on developing new aerosol technology that can generate mineral fibers and
33 other EMPs of specific dimensions in sufficient quantities to conduct animal inhalation
34 experiments. Consequently, the development of revised exposure indices based on EMP
35 dimension may not be possible in the short term.

36
37 Implicit in any new or revised policy for EMPs may be new risk assessments. Risk
38 assessments for lung cancer and asbestosis have been conducted on worker populations
39 exposed to fibers from various asbestos minerals. These risks have been qualitatively
40 confirmed in animals, but no adequate quantitative dose-response inhalation studies that
41 would allow for comparisons between minerals have been conducted in rats. Given the
42 availability of risk estimates for lung cancer in asbestos-exposed humans, chronic studies
43 with rats exposed to asbestos (e.g., chrysotile) fibers would provide an assessment of the

1 rat as a “predictor” for human lung cancer risks associated with exposure to asbestos
2 fibers and other EMPs.

3
4
5 **2.2.1 Conduct *In Vitro* Studies to Ascertain the Physical and Chemical Properties**
6 ***Influence That Toxicity of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs***

7
8 *In vitro* studies may help clarify the mechanisms by which some EMPs induce cancer,
9 mesothelioma, or fibrosis, and the properties of EMPs and conditions of exposure that
10 determine pathogenicity. With the exception of asbestos fibers, little information is
11 available of genotoxicity testing of EMPs. In contrast to standard genotoxicity testing of
12 soluble substances, results with EPs can be influenced by dimension, surface properties,
13 and biopersistence. The mechanisms of EP-induced genotoxicity are not clear but direct
14 interaction with the genetic material and indirect effects via production of ROS have been
15 proposed. A combination of the micronucleus test and the comet assay using continuous
16 treatment (without exogenous metabolic activation) has been reported to detect genotoxic
17 activity of asbestos fibers [Speit 2002]. However, further research is needed to determine
18 whether this approach is applicable for genotoxicity testing for other EMPs. Before
19 conducting such studies, the following EMP interactions should be addressed:

- 20 • initial lesions evoking cell damage or response (e.g., direct or indirect cytotoxic
21 or genotoxic events or induction of toxic reactive intermediate materials);
- 22 • subsequent multi-stage cellular response (e.g., intracellular signaling through a
23 kinase cascade to nuclear transcription of factors for apoptosis, cell
24 transformation, and cell or cell system proliferation or remodeling and initiation
25 or promotion of neoplasia or fibrosis); and
- 26 • critical time-course events in those processes (e.g., cell-cycle-dependent EMP
27 interactions or EMP durability under different phagocytic conditions).

28
29 Capabilities for these studies have improved in the last decade through:

- 30 • advancement in analytical methods for physicochemical characterization of EMP
31 properties (e.g., for resolving small dimensions and nanoscale surface properties);
32 and
- 33 • ability to prepare EMPs samples “monochromatic” in size or surface properties in
34 quantities sufficient for well-controlled *in vitro* assays.

35
36 Identification of the initiating EMP-cell interactions calls for research on the mechanisms
37 of:

- 38 • cell-free generation of toxic ROS by EMPs or EMP-induced cellular generation of
39 toxic ROS; and
- 40 • direct membranolytic, cytotoxic, or genotoxic activities of the EMP surface in
41 contact with cellular membranes or genetic material.

42
43 These investigations will require attention to the:

- 1 • effects of EMP surface composition (e.g., surface-borne iron species);
- 2 • effects of normal physiological conditioning of respired particles (e.g., *in vitro*
- 3 modeling of *in vivo* initial conditioning of EMP surfaces by pulmonary
- 4 surfactant);
- 5 • non-physiological conditioning of EMP under *in vitro* test conditions (e.g., by
- 6 components of nutrient medium);
- 7 • cell type (e.g., phagocytic inflammatory cell, or phagocytic or non-phagocytic
- 8 target cell); and
- 9 • EMP dimensions in relation to cell size (e.g., as a factor distinguishing total
- 10 phagocytosis and partial “frustrated phagocytosis”).

11
12 Cell generation of ROS is seen generally in phagocytic uptake of elongated or non-
13 elongated particles (e.g., as a respiratory burst). In normal phagocytosis, there is a
14 maturation of the phagosomal membrane with progress to a phagolysosomal structure for
15 attempted lysosomal digestion. Anomalous behavior of this system may occur in
16 frustrated phagocytosis of long EMPs. The “frustrated phagocytosis” hypothesis
17 suggests that EMPs that are too long to permit full invagination may prompt a continuing
18 stimulation of ROS by the cell or an anomalous release of lytic factors into the
19 extracellular annulus rather than into a closed intracellular phagosome.

20
21 EMP surfaces may be tested for direct membranolytic or cytotoxic activities which are
22 dependent on surface composition or structure. As a guide, membranolytic or cytotoxic
23 activities of non-elongated particulate silicates are surface-property dependent. Non-
24 elongated particulate silicates also provide an example of failure of *in vitro* cytotoxicity
25 to relate with pathogenicity (e.g., respirable particles of quartz or kaolin clay significantly
26 differ in disease risk for fibrosis, but are comparably cytotoxic *in vitro* unless they are
27 pre-conditioned with pulmonary surfactants and subjected to phagolysosomal digestion).
28 *In vitro* studies of direct versus indirect induction of genotoxic activities may consider
29 factors affecting the bioavailability of the nuclear genetic material (e.g., the state of
30 phagocytic activity of the cell or the stages in the cell cycle with collapse of the nuclear
31 membrane in mitosis). These again suggest care in the preparation and manner of
32 challenge of *in vitro* experiments on EMPs.

33
34 The two modes of primary damage, a release of reactive toxic agents induced by long
35 particulates or a surface-based membranolytic or genotoxic mechanism, may be involved
36 singly or jointly in primary cell responses to EMPs. These may be investigated by
37 comparing the effects of different types of EMPs (e.g., relative potencies of erionite
38 fibers and amphibole asbestos fibers in *in vitro* cell transformation studies are different
39 than their potencies in *in vivo* induction of mesothelioma).

40
41 In the second phase of cellular response to EMPs, the central dogma of intracellular
42 response is being well-researched. The initial extracellular primary damage induces
43 intracellular signaling (e.g., by MAPK) which causes a cascade of kinase activities that

1 stimulate selective nuclear transcription of mRNAs leading to production of TNF- α or
2 other cytokines for extracellular signaling of target cells. Those other cytokines may
3 induce cell proliferation toward cancer or collagen synthesis toward fibrosis. Further
4 definition of signaling mechanisms and analyses of their induction by different primary
5 EMP-cellular interactions may better define the ultimate role of EMP properties in the
6 overall process. That research, again, may be facilitated by using different specific types
7 EMPs, each type with relatively homogeneous morphology and surface properties.

8
9 While full investigation of biopersistence of EMPs may require long-term animal model
10 studies, *in vitro* systems coupled with advanced surface analytical tools (e.g., field
11 emission scanning electron microscopy-energy dispersive X-ray spectroscopy or
12 scanning Auger spectroscopy) may help guide *in vivo* studies. This could be done by
13 detailing specific surface properties of EMPs and their modifications under cell-free or *in*
14 *vitro* conditions representing the local pH and reactive species at the EMP surface under
15 conditions of extracellular, intra-phagolysosomal, or frustrated annular phagocytic
16 environments.

17 18 19 ***2.2.2 Conduct Animal Studies to Ascertain the Physical and Chemical Properties That*** 20 ***Influence the Toxicity of Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs***

21
22 A multi-species testing approach has been recommended for short-term assays [ILSI
23 2005] and chronic inhalation studies [EPA 2000] that would provide solid scientific
24 evidence on which to base human risk assessments for a variety of EMPs. To date, the
25 most substantial base of human health data for estimating lung cancer risk exists for
26 workers exposed to fibers from different varieties of asbestos minerals.

27
28 Interspecies differences have been identified in the clearance of inhaled particles.
29 Variations in deposition patterns and airway cell morphology and distribution account for
30 significant deposition and clearance differences among species. In addition, the efficacy
31 of pulmonary macrophage function differs among species. All these differences could
32 affect particle clearance and retention. It has been suggested that the following species
33 differences should be considered in the design of experimental animal inhalation studies
34 of elongated particles [Dai and Yu 1988; Warheit et al. 1988; Warheit 1989]:

- 35 • Due to differences in airway structure, airway size, and ventilation parameters, a
36 greater fraction of larger AED particles are deposited in humans than in rodents.
- 37 • Alveolar deposition fraction in humans varies with workload. An increase in the
38 workload reduces the deposition fraction in the alveolar region because more of
39 the inhaled particulate is deposited in the extra-thoracic and bronchial regions.
- 40 • Mouth breathing by humans results in a greater upper bronchial deposition and
41 enhanced particle penetration to the peripheral lung.

- 1 • For both animals and humans, the deposition rate of particles is greatest in the
2 AED range between 1 and 2 μm . Alveolar deposition of EPs decreases as their
3 aspect ratio increases when their width remains constant.
- 4 • For rats and hamsters, alveolar deposition becomes practically zero when particle
5 AED exceeds 3.0 μm and aspect ratio exceeds 10. In contrast, considerable
6 alveolar deposition is found for humans breathing at rest, even for EPs with
7 AEDs approaching 5 μm and aspect ratio exceeding 10.
- 8 • Rodents have smaller-diameter airways than humans, which increases the chance
9 for particle deposition via contact with airway surfaces.
- 10 • Turbulent air flow, which enhances particle deposition via impaction, is common
11 in human airways but rare in rodent airways.
- 12 • Variations in airway branching patterns may account for significant differences
13 in deposition between humans and rodents. Human airways are characterized by
14 symmetrical branching, wherein each bifurcation is located near the centerline of
15 the parent airway. This symmetry favors deposition hotspots on carinal ridges at
16 the bifurcations due to disrupted airstreams and local turbulence. Rodent airways
17 are characterized by asymmetric branching, which results in a more diffuse
18 deposition pattern because the bulk flow of inspired air follows the major airways
19 with little change in velocity or direction.
- 20 • Human lung clearance is slower than rats, and human dosimetry models predict
21 that a greater proportion of particles deposited in the alveolar region will be
22 interstitialized and sequestered in humans than in rats at non-overloading
23 exposure concentrations.

24
25 An important consideration in the conduct and interpretation of animal studies is the
26 selection of well characterized (chemical and physical parameters) and appropriately
27 sized EMPs that takes into account differences in deposition and clearance characteristics
28 between rodents and humans. EMPs that are capable of being deposited in the
29 bronchoalveolar region of humans cannot be completely evaluated in animal inhalation
30 studies because the maximum thoracic size for rodents is an AED of approximately 2 μm ,
31 less than the maximum thoracic size of about 3 μm for humans [Timbrell 1982; Su and
32 Cheng 2005].

33 34 35 2.2.2.1 Short-Term Animal Studies

36
37 There are advantages to conducting short-term animal studies in rats. The information
38 gained (e.g., regarding overload and maximum tolerated dose [MTD]) from these studies
39 can be used in designing chronic inhalation studies [ILSI 2005]. The objectives of these
40 studies would be to:

- 41 • Evaluate EMP deposition, translocation, and clearance mechanisms;
- 42 • Compare the biopersistence of EMPs retained in the lung with results from *in*
43 *vitro* durability experiments;

- 1 • Compare *in vivo* pulmonary responses to *in vitro* bioactivity for EMPs of different
2 dimensions; and
3 • Compare cancer and noncancer toxicities of EMPs from asbestiform and
4 nonasbestiform amphibole mineral varieties with varying shapes as well as within
5 narrow length and width size ranges.
6

7 More fundamental studies should also be performed to:

- 8 • Identify biomarkers or tracer/imaging methods that could be used to predict or
9 monitor active pulmonary inflammation, pulmonary fibrosis, and malignant
10 transformation;
11 • Investigate mechanisms of EMP-induced pulmonary disease; and
12 • Determine whether cell proliferation in the lungs (terminal bronchioles and
13 alveolar ducts) can be a predictive measure of pathogenicity following brief
14 inhalation exposure using the BrdU assay [Cullen et al. 1997].
15

16 Exposure protocols for tracheal inhalation or instillation in an animal model for short-
17 term *in vivo* or *ex vivo* studies using field-collected or laboratory-generated EMPs should
18 address possible adulteration of EMP morphology (e.g., anomalous agglomeration of
19 particles). This might be addressed in part by pre-conditioning EMPs in a delivery
20 vehicle containing representative components of pulmonary hypophase fluids. Exposure
21 protocols using pharyngeal aspiration as a delivery system should be considered given the
22 observations in studies with single-walled carbon nanotubes that such a delivery system
23 closely mimics animal inhalation studies [Shvedova et al. 2005, 2008].
24

25 Studies evaluating the roles of biopersistence and dimension in the development of non-
26 cancer and cancer endpoints from exposure to EMPs are also needed. These studies
27 should attempt to elucidate the physicochemical parameters that might affect bio-
28 durability for EMPs of specific dimensions. While short-term animal inhalation studies
29 would be informative, companion *in vitro* assays should also be conducted to assess the
30 viability of such assays for screening EMPs.
31

32 33 2.2.2.2 Long-Term Animal Studies 34

35 Chronic animal inhalation studies are required to address the impacts of dimension,
36 morphology, chemistry, and biopersistence on critical disease endpoints of cancer
37 induction and nonmalignant respiratory disease. The EPA's proposed testing guidelines
38 should be used as the criteria for establishing the testing parameters for chronic studies
39 [EPA 2000].
40

41 To date, chronic inhalation studies have been conducted with different animal species
42 using different types of EPs. However, it remains uncertain which species of animal(s)
43 best predict(s) the risk of respiratory disease(s) for workers exposed to different EPs.

1 Chronic inhalation studies should be initiated to establish exposure/dose-response
2 relationships for at least two animal species. The rat has historically been the animal of
3 choice for chronic inhalation studies with EPs, but the low incidence of lung tumors and
4 mesotheliomas occurring in rats exposed to asbestos fibers suggests that rats may be less
5 sensitive than humans. Therefore, any future consideration for conducting long-term
6 animal inhalation studies should address the need for using a multi-species testing
7 approach to help provide solid scientific evidence on which to base human risk
8 assessments for a variety of EMPs of different durabilities and dimensions. For example,
9 some recent studies suggest that the hamster may be a more sensitive model for
10 mesothelioma than the rat. Validation of appropriate animal models could reduce the
11 resources needed to perform long-term experimental studies on other fiber types [EPA
12 2000].

13
14 Multi-dose animal inhalation studies with asbestos (probably a carefully selected and
15 well-characterized chrysotile, because most of the estimates of human risk have been
16 established from epidemiological studies of chrysotile-exposed workers) are needed to
17 provide an improved basis for comparing the potential cancer and non-cancer risks
18 associated with other types of EMPs and various types of synthetic fibers. The asbestos
19 fibers administered in these animal studies should be comparable in dimension to those
20 fibers found in the occupational environment. The results from these studies with
21 asbestos (e.g., chrysotile) would provide a “gold standard” that could be used to validate
22 the utility of long-term inhalation studies (in rats or other species) for predicting human
23 risks of exposure to various types of EMPs.

24 25 26 **2.3 Develop Information and Knowledge on Occupational Exposures to Asbestos** 27 **Fibers and Other EMPs and Related Health Outcomes**

28
29 Many studies have been published concerning occupational exposures to asbestos fibers
30 and associated health effects. These studies have formed a knowledge base that has
31 supported increased regulation of occupational asbestos exposures and substantial
32 reductions in asbestos use and asbestos exposures in the U.S. over the past several
33 decades. But, as this *Roadmap* makes clear, much less is known about other types of
34 mineral fibers and EMPs in terms of occupational exposures and potential health effects.

35
36 Research is needed to produce information on:

- 37 • current estimates and, where possible, future projections of numbers of U.S.
38 workers exposed to asbestos fibers;
 - 39 • levels of current exposures; and nature of the exposures (e.g., continuous, short-
40 term, or intermittent); and
 - 41 • the nature of any concomitant dust exposures.
- 42

1 Similar research is needed to produce analogous information about occupational
2 exposures to other mineral fibers and EMPs. Research is needed to assess and quantify
3 potential human health risks associated with occupational exposures to other mineral
4 fibers and EMPs, as well as to better understand and quantify the epidemiology of
5 asbestos-related diseases using more refined indices of exposure. Research is also
6 needed to produce improved methods and clinical guidance for screening, diagnosis,
7 secondary prevention, and treatment of diseases caused by asbestos and other hazardous
8 EMPs.

9 10 11 ***2.3.1 Assess Available Information on Occupational Exposures to Asbestos Fibers and*** 12 ***Other EMPs***

13
14 A fully informed strategy for prioritizing research on EMPs should optimally be based on
15 preliminary systematic collection and evaluation of available information on: (1)
16 industries/occupations/job tasks/processes with exposure to various types of mineral
17 fibers and other EMPs; (2) numbers of workers exposed; (3) characteristics and levels of
18 exposures to EMPs; and (4) associated concomitant particulate exposures. Such
19 information could enable estimations of:

- 20 • the overall distribution and levels of occupational exposures to EMPs and an
21 estimate of the total number of workers exposed to EMPs currently, in the past,
22 and projected in the future; and
- 23 • specific distributions and levels of exposures to each particular type of EMP, as
24 well as numbers of workers exposed to each type of EMP currently, in the past,
25 and (projected) in the future.

26
27 Initial efforts should be made to collect, review, and summarize available occupational
28 exposure information and to collect and analyze representative air samples relating to
29 various types of EMPs. For example, systematic compilation of exposure data collected
30 by OSHA, MSHA, NIOSH, state agencies, and private industry could contribute to an
31 improved understanding of current occupational exposures to EMPs, particularly if there
32 are opportunities to (re)analyze collected samples using enhanced analytical methods to
33 better characterize the exposures (see Section 2.4). To help limit potential impact of
34 sampling bias that may be inherent in the available EMP exposure data, these initial
35 efforts should be supplemented with efforts to systematically identify, sample, and
36 characterize EMP exposures throughout U.S. industry. These exposure assessments
37 should include workplaces in which a fraction of the dust is comprised of EMPs (i.e.,
38 mixed-dust environments), and occupational environments in which EMPs may not meet
39 the current regulatory criteria to be counted (i.e., “short” fibers). With appropriate
40 planning and resources, such efforts could be designed and implemented as ongoing
41 surveillance of occupational exposures to EMPs, with periodic summary reporting of
42 findings. Representative EMP exposure data could help identify worker populations or
43 particular types of EMPs that would warrant further study (i.e., more in-depth exposure

1 assessment, medical surveillance; epidemiology studies of particular types of EMPs,
2 processes, job tasks, occupations, or industries; toxicity studies of particular EMPs).
3 Occupational exposures should be collected and stored in the comprehensive asbestos
4 database. Information similar to that described in Marchant et al. [2002], should be
5 incorporated into the database to support these efforts. This could be accomplished in
6 parallel with efforts to develop an occupational exposure database for nanotechnology
7 [Miller et al. 2007] or efforts to develop a national occupational exposure database
8 [Middendorf et al. 2007].
9

10 11 ***2.3.2 Collect and Analyze Available Information on Health Outcomes Associated*** 12 ***with Exposures to Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs*** 13

14 The body of knowledge concerning human health effects from exposure to EMPs consists
15 primarily of epidemiological studies of workers exposed to asbestos fibers and several
16 other types of EMPs (e.g., wollastonite, attapulgite, erionite). Additional relevant
17 information may be gleaned from the epidemiological studies conducted on some SVFs
18 (e.g., glass and mineral wool fibers, ceramic fibers). There is general agreement that
19 workers exposed to fibers from any asbestiform mineral would be at risk of serious
20 adverse health outcomes of the type caused by exposure to fibers from the six
21 commercially exploited asbestos minerals. NIOSH commented on the recent MSHA
22 proposed rule on asbestos (subsequently promulgated as a final rule), stating that
23 “NIOSH remains concerned that the regulatory definition of asbestos should include
24 asbestiform mineral fibers such as winchite and richterite, which were of major
25 importance as contaminants in the Libby, MT vermiculite” [NIOSH 2005]. To ensure a
26 clear science base that might support a formal recommendation for control of
27 occupational exposures to all asbestiform amphibole fibers, it would be reasonable to
28 thoroughly review, assess, and summarize the available information on asbestiform
29 amphiboles that have not been commercially exploited as asbestos. Publication of such a
30 review could be done in the short term.
31

32 It will also be important to authoritatively and quantitatively determine health risks posed
33 by EMPs from nonasbestiform amphiboles and to compare them to those posed by fibers
34 from asbestiform amphiboles. Animal and *in vitro* studies have indicated a potential risk
35 for exposed humans, but available epidemiological studies have limitations that do not
36 allow them to definitively resolve this major area of current controversy. If
37 nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs are, in fact, associated with some risk, a quantitative
38 risk assessment would be needed to understand the risks relative to those associated with
39 exposures to asbestos fibers. A risk assessment of nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs
40 should be performed if new epidemiological and other evidence is sufficient to support
41 such a risk estimate that could, in turn, lead to development of a risk management policy
42 for nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs that is distinct from asbestos fiber policy. Separate
43 risk management policies would motivate development and use of routine analytical
44 methods that differentiate asbestiform from nonasbestiform particles on air sample filters.

1
2 Surveillance and epidemiological studies generally have been circumscribed by the long
3 latency periods that characterize manifestations of either pulmonary fibrosis (e.g., as
4 detected by chest radiographs or pulmonary function tests) or cancer caused by asbestos
5 exposures. Modern medical pulmonary imaging techniques or bioassays of circulating
6 levels of cytokines or other biochemical factors associated with disease processes might
7 be adaptable to better define early stages of asbestosis, and might provide a new
8 paradigm for early detection of the active disease process. For example, positron
9 emission tomographic imaging using tracers indicative of active collagen synthesis can
10 detect fibrogenic response in a matter of weeks after quartz dust challenge in a rabbit
11 animal model [Jones et al. 1997; Wallace et al. 2002].
12
13

14 ***2.3.3 Conduct Selective Epidemiological Studies of Workers Exposed to Asbestos*** 15 ***Fibers and Other EMPs*** 16

17 Statistically powerful and well designed epidemiological studies are typically very
18 expensive and time consuming, but they have been invaluable for defining associations
19 between human health outcomes and occupational exposures. In fact, the strongest
20 human evidence indicating that, at a sufficient dose and with a sufficient latency, certain
21 EMPs of thoracic dimension and high durability pose risks for malignant and
22 nonmalignant respiratory disease has come from epidemiological studies of workers
23 exposed to asbestos fibers.
24

25 Results from epidemiological studies of workers exposed to EMPs from nonasbestiform
26 amphibole minerals have provided limited, if any, evidence in support of an association
27 between occupational exposure and lung cancer or mesothelioma. To understand if
28 occupational exposure to nonasbestiform amphibole EMPs is associated with
29 insignificant risk, it will be important to identify the criteria for epidemiological studies
30 or meta-analyses necessary to conclude that exposure is not associated with a risk that
31 warrants preventive intervention. Clearly laying out these criteria and assessing the
32 feasibility of conducting necessary studies should be done by a panel of knowledgeable
33 experts. Laboratory research will undoubtedly shed much light on the issue of potential
34 human health risks associated with specific physicochemical characteristics of EMPs,
35 including amphibole cleavage fragments. Still, where not only feasible but also judged
36 likely to be informative, there is reason to consider:

- 37 • Epidemiological studies of worker populations exposed to amphibole cleavage
38 fragments (e.g., taconite miners in Minnesota, talc miners in New York, etc.)
39 conducted either *de novo* or through updating of prior studies for more complete
40 follow-up of health outcomes and/or through re-analyzing archived exposure
41 samples for development of more specific knowledge concerning etiologic
42 determinants and quantitative risk;

- 1 • Epidemiological studies of populations incidentally exposed to EMPs from
2 fibrous minerals, including asbestiform minerals (e.g., those associated with
3 Libby vermiculite);
- 4 • Epidemiological studies of populations exposed to other less-well-studied EMPs
5 (e.g., wollastonite, attapulgite, and erionite); and
- 6 • Meta-analyses of data from multiple epidemiological studies of various
7 populations, each exposed to EMPs with somewhat different attributes (e.g., EMP
8 type, dimensions, etc.) to better define specific determinants of EMP-associated
9 adverse health outcomes for risk assessment purposes.

10
11 Outcomes from proposed research efforts outlined above in Section 2.3.2 may identify
12 additional opportunities for informative epidemiological studies following the lead of
13 NIOSH researchers who have recently undertaken a reanalysis of data from a prior
14 epidemiological study of asbestos textile workers after having more thoroughly
15 characterized exposures using sample filters archived from that study [Kuempel et al.
16 2006]. Outcomes from the approaches outlined above in Section 2.3.2 might also
17 potentially identify opportunities for aggregate meta-analyses of data from multiple prior
18 epidemiological studies, allowing an assessment of risks across various types of EMPs.

19
20 Large unstudied populations with sufficiently high exposure to asbestos fibers are
21 unlikely to be identified in developed countries like the U.S., where asbestos use has been
22 markedly curtailed and where occupational exposures have been strictly regulated in
23 recent decades. Nevertheless, some developing countries (where asbestos use continues
24 on a large scale and where exposures may be less regulated) may offer opportunities for
25 *de novo* epidemiological studies that could contribute to a more refined understanding of
26 the association of human health outcomes to occupational exposures to asbestos and other
27 EMPs. Opportunities for epidemiological studies of exposed workers might be sought in
28 other countries where medical registry data and historical or current workplace sampling
29 data are available (e.g., in China, where epidemiological studies of another occupational
30 dust disease, silicosis, have been collaboratively conducted by Chinese and NIOSH
31 researchers [Chen et al. 2005]).

32
33 The following criteria should be considered in selecting and prioritizing possible
34 populations for epidemiological study: (1) type of EMP exposure (e.g., mineral source,
35 chemical composition, crystalline structure, surface characteristics, and durability); (2)
36 adequate exposure information (e.g., EMP concentrations and (bivariate) EMP
37 dimensions); (3) good work histories; (4) sufficient latency; (5) number of workers
38 needed to provide adequate statistical power for the health outcome(s) of interest; and (6)
39 availability of data on other potentially confounding risk factors. Priority should be
40 placed on epidemiological studies with potential to contribute to the understanding of
41 EMP characteristics that determine toxicity, including type of mineral source (e.g.,
42 asbestiform mineral habit vs. other fibrous mineral habit vs. blocky mineral habit) and

1 morphology and other aspects of the airborne EMPs (e.g., dimensions [length and width],
2 chemical composition, crystalline structure, surface characteristics, and durability).

3
4 In addition to epidemiological studies that address etiology and that quantify exposure-
5 related risk, epidemiological studies can be used to better understand the pathogenesis of
6 lung diseases caused by asbestos fibers and other EMPs. For example, appropriately
7 designed epidemiological studies could be used to assess the relationship between lung
8 fibrosis and lung cancer.

9
10
11 ***2.3.4 Improve Clinical Tools and Practices for Screening, Diagnosis, Treatment, and***
12 ***Secondary Prevention of Diseases Caused by Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs***
13

14 Given the huge human and economic impact of asbestos-related disease and litigation,
15 Congress has considered asbestos-related legislation on several occasions in recent years.
16 To date, bills with provisions to require private industry to fund an asbestos victims' trust
17 fund have not succeeded in passing Congress. Most recently, a "Ban Asbestos in
18 America Act," which passed the U.S. Senate in 2007 but was not acted on in the House,
19 would have authorized and funded a network of Asbestos-Related Disease Research and
20 Treatment Centers to conduct research, including clinical trials, on effective treatment,
21 early detection, and prevention [U.S. Senate 2007]. This bill also called for the
22 establishment of a mechanism for coordinating and providing data and specimens relating
23 to asbestos-caused diseases from cancer registries and other centers, including a recently
24 funded virtual biospecimen bank for mesothelioma [Mesothelioma Virtual Bank 2007].
25

26 Various research objectives relevant to clinical aspects of asbestos-related diseases are
27 worthy of pursuit by NIOSH and other Federal agencies along with their partners to
28 improve screening, diagnosis, secondary prevention, and treatment. These include, but
29 are not limited to:

- 30 • Develop and validate approaches for standardized assessment of digital chest
31 radiographs using the ILO classification system. The ILO system for classifying
32 chest radiographs of the pneumoconioses is widely used as a standard throughout
33 the world. While initially intended for use in epidemiological studies, the ILO
34 system is now widely used as a basis for describing severity of disease in clinical
35 care and for awarding compensation to individuals affected by non-malignant
36 diseases of the chest caused by asbestos and other airborne dusts. The ongoing
37 rapid displacement of traditional film radiography by digital radiography has
38 raised concerns about whether and how the ILO system can be validly applied to
39 digital chest images. Research is needed to describe specifications for classifying
40 digital chest images using the ILO system.
- 41 • Develop and promote standardized assessment of non-malignant dust-induced
42 diseases, including asbestos-related pleural and parenchymal disease, on
43 computed tomography (CT) images of the chest. Over the past several decades,

- 1 CT scanning of the chest has become increasingly used for assessing chest disease
2 and high-resolution CT scanning is often done in clinical settings. While
3 approaches for standardizing classifications of CT images for dust-related
4 diseases have been proposed, they have not yet been widely adopted or
5 authoritatively promoted.
- 6 • Develop, validate, and promote standardization of approaches for assessment of
7 past asbestos exposures by measurement of asbestos bodies and uncoated fibers,
8 particularly in samples collected noninvasively (e.g., sputum). Various
9 approaches for quantifying fiber burden have been used for research and clinical
10 purposes, but results are often difficult or impossible to compare across different
11 studies due to lack of standardization and differential rates of biopersistence and
12 translocation of various types of asbestos fibers.
 - 13 • Develop and validate biomarkers for asbestosis, lung cancer, and mesothelioma to
14 enable more specific identification of those at risk or early detection of disease in
15 those previously exposed to asbestos. For example, non-invasive bioassays for
16 mesothelioma warrant further research before they can be considered ready for
17 routine application in clinical practice.
 - 18 • Develop and/or adapt modern medical pulmonary imaging techniques to better
19 define stages of asbestosis, or to provide a new paradigm for early detection or
20 grading of the active disease process. For example, positron emission
21 tomographic (PET) imaging using tracers indicative of active collagen synthesis
22 can detect fibrogenic response in a matter of weeks after quartz dust challenge in
23 a rabbit animal model [Jones et al. 1997; Wallace et al. 2002]. This holds promise
24 for non-invasive approaches for earlier clinical detection and more sensitive
25 surveillance and epidemiological studies, that to date have been circumscribed by
26 the long latency periods that characterize pulmonary fibrosis associated with
27 asbestos exposures (e.g., as detected by conventional chest radiography).
 - 28 • Develop new treatment options to enhance the effectiveness of treatments for
29 established disease and to reduce risk of malignant and nonmalignant disease
30 among those previously exposed to asbestos. For example, many widely used
31 anti-inflammatory drugs exert their effect by inhibiting cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-
32 2), an enzyme that is induced in inflammatory and malignant (including pre-
33 malignant) processes. Promising results of laboratory and case-control
34 epidemiological studies have led to clinical trials of COX-2 inhibitors as adjuvant
35 therapy to enhance treatments for various types of cancer. Research is warranted
36 to determine whether these drugs can reduce the risk of asbestos-related
37 malignancies in exposed individuals.
 - 38 • Clear clinical guidance for practitioners, based on expert synthesis of available
39 literature, should be regularly updated and disseminated in an authoritative
40 manner.
- 41
42

1 **2.4 Develop Improved Sampling and Analytical Methods for Asbestos Fibers and**
2 **Other EMPs**

3
4 There are important scientific gaps in understanding the health impacts of exposure to
5 EMPs. Changes in how EMPs are defined for regulatory purposes will likely have to be
6 accompanied by improvements to currently used analytical methods or development and
7 application of new analytical methods. An ability to differentiate between fibers from the
8 asbestos minerals and EMPs from their nonasbestiform analogs in air samples is an
9 important need, especially for recommendations (e.g., occupational exposure limits)
10 specific to type of mineral. However, overcoming this obstacle may be difficult because
11 of: (1) lack of standard criteria for the mineralogical identification of airborne EMPs; and
12 (2) technical difficulties in generating test aerosols of size-specific EMPs representative
13 of worker exposures so that sampling and analytical methods can be tested and validated.

14
15 Until new analytical methods are developed and applied, it will be necessary to
16 investigate the various proposals that have been made to adjust current analytical
17 methods, such as those discussed in Section 1.5.2, and additional modifications to the
18 current analytical methods will have to be explored. Improvements in exposure
19 assessment methods are needed to increase the accuracy of the methods used to identify,
20 differentiate, and count EMPs captured in air-sampling filter media.

21
22 Some barriers to improving current analytical methods have been identified. Increasing
23 the optical resolution of PCM analysis may help to increase counts of thinner asbestos
24 fibers. However, any increases in optical microscopy resolution will not be sufficient to
25 detect all asbestos fibers. In addition, any improvements in counting EMPs (e.g.,
26 increase in the number of EMPs observed and counted) will need to be evaluated by
27 comparing them with counts made by the current PCM method. The use of electron
28 microscopy (EM) would improve the capability to detect thin fibers and also provide a
29 means to identify many types of minerals. However, the routine use of EM would:

- 30 • require the development of standardized analytical criteria for the identification of
31 various EMPs;
- 32 • require specialized experience in microscopy and mineral identification;
- 33 • increase analytical costs; and
- 34 • potentially increase the lag time between collecting the sample and obtaining
35 results.

36
37 In some workplace situations, such as in construction, increases in the time needed to
38 analyze samples and identify EMPs could potentially delay the implementation of
39 appropriate control measures to reduce exposures.

40
41 Several potential sampling and analytical improvements are currently under study. Some
42 of the studies are aimed at improving the accuracy of current techniques used for
43 monitoring exposures to asbestos. One such study is evaluating the use of thoracic

1 samplers for the collection of airborne fibers and another is studying the use of
2 gridded cover slips when performing PCM analysis. The proposed use of gridded cover
3 slips for sample evaluation can aid in the counting of EMPs and can provide a means for
4 “recounting” fibers at specific locations on the filter sample. Another study is evaluating
5 the proposed ASTM method to determine whether inter-operator variability of
6 differential counting (to distinguish fibers of asbestos minerals from other EMPs) is
7 within an acceptable range.

8
9 Research into new method development is warranted. One such area would be the
10 development of methods that would permit an assessment of the potential biopersistence
11 (e.g., durability) of EMPs collected on air sampling filters prior to their evaluation by
12 PCM or other microscopic methods. If durability is deemed biologically relevant, then
13 the assessment of only durable EMPs collected on samples would help to reduce possible
14 interferences caused by other EMPs in the analysis. Another such area would be
15 improvement in EM particle identification techniques, such as field emission SEM and
16 the capability to determine the elemental composition of EMPs using an SEM equipped
17 with EDS.

18
19 Modifications of current analytical methods and development of new analytical methods
20 will require an assessment of worker health implications (e.g., how do the results using
21 improved or new methods relate to human risk estimates based on counts of EMPs made
22 by PCM?). To ensure that relevant toxicological parameters (e.g., dimension, durability,
23 and physicochemical parameters) are incorporated in the analysis and measurement,
24 changes in analytical methods should be made in concert with changes in how asbestos
25 fibers or other EMPs are defined.

26 27 28 ***2.4.1 Reduce Inter-operator and Inter-laboratory Variability of the Current Analytical*** 29 ***Methods Used for Asbestos Fibers***

30
31 To ensure the validity of EMP counts made on air samples, it is important to ensure
32 consistency in EMP counts between analysts. Microscopic counts of EMPs on air
33 samples are made using only a small percentage of the surface area of the filter, and the
34 counting procedures require the analysts to make decisions on whether each observed
35 particle meets specified criteria for counting. Interlaboratory sample exchange programs
36 have been shown to be important for ensuring agreement in asbestos fiber counts between
37 laboratories [Crawford et al. 1982]. Unfortunately, microscopists from different
38 laboratories are unlikely to view exactly the same fields, resulting in some of the
39 observed variation that exists in fiber counts between microscopists. A mechanism to
40 allow recounts of fibers from the exact same field areas would remove this variable and
41 allow a better assessment of the variation between microscopists in analyzing samples.

42
43 A technique is under development for improving the accuracy of PCM-based fiber-
44 counting by allowing the same sample fields to be examined by multiple microscopists or

1 by the same microscopist on different occasions [Pang et al. 1984, 1989; Pang 2000].
2 The method involves the deposition of an almost transparent TEM grid onto the sample.
3 Included with the grid are coordinates allowing each grid opening to be relocated.
4 Photomicrographs of typical grid openings superimposed on chrysotile and amosite
5 samples have been published [Pang et al. 1989]. Slides prepared in this manner have
6 been used in a Canadian proficiency test program for many years. The main errors
7 affecting the counts of various types of fibers (e.g., chrysotile, amosite, and SVF) have
8 been evaluated by examining large numbers of slides by large numbers of participants in
9 this program. A recently developed scoring system for evaluating the performance of
10 microscopists is based on errors compared with a reference value defined for each slide
11 by the laboratory in which they were produced [Pang 2002]. A statistical analysis of the
12 intra-group precision in this study was able to identify those analysts who were outliers
13 [Harper and Bartolucci 2003]. In a pilot study, the pooled relative standard deviations,
14 without the outliers, met the requirements for an unbiased air sampling method. Further
15 study is needed to validate these findings and to identify other techniques that can reduce
16 inter-laboratory and inter-operator variability in counting EMPs by PCM.

17
18 Reference slides made from proficiency test filters from the American Industrial Hygiene
19 Association (AIHA) have been created and circulated to laboratories and individual
20 microscopists recruited from AIHA laboratory quality programs. Initial results have been
21 published [Pang and Harper 2008] and further results have been submitted for publication
22 [Harper et al. 2008a]. The results illustrate clearly the greater discrimination possible
23 between microscopists with proficiency test materials of more controlled composition.
24 These reference slides have also been evaluated in Japan, the United Kingdom, and
25 Europe. Further research will be useful in determining the value of these slides for
26 training purposes.

27 28 29 ***2.4.2 Develop Analytical Methods with Improved Sensitivity to Visualize Thinner*** 30 ***EMPs to Ensure a More Complete Evaluation of Airborne Exposures***

31
32 Most PCMs can visualize EMPs with widths $>0.25 \mu\text{m}$, which is the approximate lower
33 resolution limit when the microscope is operated at a magnification of 400X and
34 calibrated to NIOSH 7400 specifications [NIOSH 1994a]. However, higher-end optical
35 microscopes can resolve thinner widths, and, for crocidolite, they may resolve widths as
36 small as $0.1 \mu\text{m}$.

37
38 Improvement in the optical resolution may be possible using an oil-immersion 100X
39 objective with a numerical aperture of 1.49. Also, the use of 15X eyepiece oculars would
40 help improve the visibility of small particles and thin EMPs on samples. However, using
41 oil immersion has several drawbacks. When exposed to air for more than a few hours,
42 the oil on the slide dries and its optical properties change. Also, the oil cannot be wiped
43 off because the cover slip is likely to be moved and ruin the sample. For these reasons,

1 using oil immersion does not permit recounts or further analysis for quality control
2 purposes and is not an attractive alternative.

3
4 Other methods may also allow for increased resolution using optical microscopes.
5 Anecdotal information on the use of dark-medium microscopy (DM), presented at a
6 meeting in November 2007, suggests that analysts using DM could resolve more blocks
7 of the Health and Safety Executive/National Physical Laboratory (HSE/NPL) test slide⁴
8 than are allowable for the method and produced higher counts of chrysotile fibers than
9 expected [Harper 2008]. The implication is that using DM resolves thinner chrysotile
10 fibers than does the accepted method. This methodology should be explored further to
11 determine its resolution and potential application in asbestos exposure assessment.

12
13 However, because risk estimates for workers exposed to asbestos fibers have been based
14 on counts made by the current PCM method, counts made with improved optical
15 microscope resolution capabilities would not be directly comparable to current
16 occupational exposure limits for airborne asbestos fibers. Additionally, the findings that
17 asbestos fibers thinner than 0.1 μm are most associated with mesothelioma and that
18 optical microscopes cannot resolve fibers $<0.1 \mu\text{m}$ in width suggest that PCM should be
19 used only as an interim method until limitations relating to the cost, availability, and
20 time-for-analysis issues of EM methods are overcome, or until other methods are
21 identified, developed, and validated.

22
23 TEM can resolve asbestos fibers with widths $<\sim 0.01 \mu\text{m}$, which effectively detects the
24 presence of asbestos fibers and other EMPs collected on airborne samples. Both TEM
25 and SEM provide greater resolution for detecting and sizing EMPs. Both methods also
26 provide capability for mineral identification using selected area X-ray diffraction (SAED)
27 and/or elemental analysis (e.g., EDS and WDS). The cost of using TEM and/or SEM for
28 routine sample analysis would be considerably higher than PCM analysis and the
29 turnaround time for sample analysis would be substantially longer. In addition, any
30 routine use of EM methods for counting and sizing fibers or other EMPs would require
31 an evaluation of inter-operator and inter-laboratory variability.

32
33 SEM is now a generally available method which can routinely resolve features down to
34 $\sim 0.05 \mu\text{m}$, an order of magnitude better than optical microscopes. Field emission SEM
35 (FE-SEM) is now commercially available and further increases this resolution.
36 Laboratory *in vitro* or short-term or long-term animal model studies can now utilize these
37 EM imaging technologies to characterize EMPs for studies of etiology and disease
38 mechanism. For detailed laboratory studies of the role of EMP chemistry and surface

⁴ The HSE/NPL Mark II Phase Shift Test Slide checks or standardizes the visual detection limits of the PCM. The HSE/NPL Test Slide consists of a conventional glass microscope slide with seven sets of parallel line pairs of decreasing widths. The microscope must clearly resolve line pairs 1 thru 3. Line pairs 4 and 5 must be at least partially visible. Line pairs 6 and 7 must be invisible. A microscope which fails to meet these requirements is considered either too low or too high in resolution and cannot be used for asbestos detection.

1 composition in disease mechanism, EM analyses of EMP size and composition can be
2 complemented with analysis of surface elemental composition by scanning Auger
3 spectroscopy or X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy. Investigation is needed to determine
4 whether SEM-backscatter electron diffraction analysis can be adapted to EMP
5 crystallographic analyses equivalent to TEM-SAED capability. Ease of sample
6 preparation and data collection for SEM analysis compared to TEM, along with some
7 SEM advantage in visualizing EMP and EMP morphology (e.g., surface characteristics),
8 provides reason to reevaluate SEM methods for EMP characterization and mineral
9 identification both for field and laboratory sample analysis.

10
11
12 ***2.4.3 Develop a Practical Analytical Method for Air Samples to Differentiate Between***
13 ***Asbestiform Fibers from the Asbestos Minerals and EMPs from Their***
14 ***Nonasbestiform Analogs***
15

16 A recently published ASTM method for distinguishing other EMPs from probable
17 asbestos fibers uses PCM-determined morphologic features to differentiate asbestos
18 fibers from other EMPs [ASTM 2006]. The proposed method has several points of
19 deviation from existing PCM methodologies. It uses a new graticule that has not been
20 tested for conformance with the traditional graticule used in standard PCM analysis of
21 asbestos air samples. It specifies additional counting rules to classify particles, and there
22 are few data to show these rules provide consistently achievable or meaningful results.
23 Also, only limited data are available to show inter- or intra-operator or inter-laboratory
24 variation. These issues must be addressed before the methodology can be considered
25 acceptable. NIOSH researchers are currently addressing these issues. Specific aims of
26 the project are:

- 27
- To determine the effect of using the traditional Walton-Beckett graticule and the
28 new RIB graticule on the precision of measuring fiber dimensions; and
 - To determine the inter-laboratory variation of the proposed method for
29 determining particle identities through observation of morphological features of
30 individual particles.
31
- 32

33 Anticipated outcomes of these ongoing research projects include a measure of method
34 precision, which will help to determine whether the method meets the requirements of
35 regulatory and other agencies.
36

37 While EM may currently not be suitable for routine analysis of samples of airborne
38 EMPs, EM techniques used to characterize and identify minerals (e.g., differentiating
39 between asbestos fibers and other EMPs) should to be further investigated and evaluated
40 to determine whether the results can be reproduced by multiple microscopists and
41 laboratories.
42
43

1 **2.4.4 Develop Analytical Methods to Assess Durability of EMPs**

2
3 While some research has been conducted to determine the ability of biological assays to
4 evaluate the biopersistence of EMPs in the lung, there is a need to consider how the
5 assessment of EMP durability might be incorporated into the evaluation of air samples
6 containing a heterogeneous mix of EMPs. Research with several types of glass fibers and
7 some other SVFs indicate that they dissolve in media at different rates depending on the
8 pH and that they dissolve more rapidly than chrysotile and amphibole asbestos fibers
9 [Leineweber 1984]. Chrysotile fibers have been shown to dissolve at a rate which varies
10 not only with the strength of the acid, but also with the type of acid. Amphibole asbestos
11 fibers have been shown to be more resistant to dissolution than chrysotile fibers.
12 Research suggests that the rate of dissolution for most EMPs appears to be strongly
13 dependent on their chemical composition, surface characteristics, and dimension.

14
15 The selective dissolution of EMPs might be a useful approach in eliminating specific
16 types of EMPs or other particulates collected on air samples prior to analysis (e.g.,
17 microscopic counting). The removal of interfering EMPs prior to counting could
18 eliminate the need for additional analysis to identify EMPs on the sample. Selective
19 dissolution of samples to remove interferences is well established in NIOSH practice for
20 other analytes. NIOSH Method 5040 for diesel exhaust has an option for using
21 acidification of the filter sample with hydrochloric acid to remove carbonate interference
22 [NIOSH 2003a]. Silicate interferences for quartz by infra-red spectroscopic detection are
23 removed by phosphoric acid digestion in NIOSH Method 7603 [NIOSH 2003b].
24 Although selective dissolution might be accomplished for some EMPs, research will be
25 necessary to develop and characterize a procedure that would correlate residual EMP
26 counts to toxicity.

27
28
29 **2.4.5 Develop and Validate Size-selective Sampling Methods for EMPs**

30
31 For measuring concentrations of non-elongated dust in workplaces, conventions have
32 been developed for sampling the aerosol fractions that penetrate to certain regions of the
33 respiratory tract upon inhalation: the inhalable fraction of dust that enters into the nose or
34 the mouth; the thoracic fraction of dust that penetrates into the thorax (i.e., beyond the
35 larynx); and the respirable fraction of dust that reaches the alveolar lung. The thoracic
36 convention is recognized by NIOSH and other organizations that recommend exposure
37 limits, and NIOSH has established precedence in applying it in RELs (e.g., the REL for
38 metalworking fluid aerosols [NIOSH 1998]).

39
40 Asbestos fibers currently are collected for measurement using standard sampling and
41 analytical methods (e.g., NIOSH Method 7400 [NIOSH 1994a], in OSHA ID-160
42 [OSHA 1998], in Methods for the Determination of Hazardous Substances (MDHS) 39/4
43 [HSE 1995], and in ISO 8672 [ISO 1993]). In these methods, air samples are taken using
44 a membrane filter housed in a cassette with a cowled sampling head. Early studies

1 [Walton 1954] showed that the vertical cowl excludes some very coarse particles due to
2 elutriation, but its selection characteristics should have little effect on the collection
3 efficiency for asbestos fibers. However, when Chen and Baron [1996] evaluated the
4 sampling cassette with a conductive cowl used in sampling for asbestos fibers, they found
5 inlet deposition was higher in field measurements than predicted by models.

6
7 NIOSH has not recommended an upper limit for width of asbestos fibers to be counted
8 because airborne asbestos fibers typically have widths $<3 \mu\text{m}$. The absence of an upper
9 width criterion for the NIOSH Method 7400 A rules has generated some criticism that
10 some EMPs counted by this method may not be thoracic-size. Others have recommended
11 NIOSH Method 7400 B rules for the sampling and analysis of various types of fibers and
12 EPs, including asbestos fibers [Baron 1996], because the B rules specify an upper limit of
13 $3 \mu\text{m}$ for EP width. However, Method 7400 B rules have not been field-tested for
14 occupational exposures to many types of EPs or organic synthetic fibers.

15
16 Two separate but complementary investigations have examined the performance of
17 thoracic samplers for EMPs [Jones et al. 2005; Maynard 2002]. Thoracic samplers allow
18 the collection of airborne particles that meet the aerodynamic definition of thoracic-size
19 EMPs (i.e., with physical widths equal to or less than $3 \mu\text{m}$ for the typical length
20 distributions of fibers of silicate composition), eliminating the deposition of large
21 particles on the sample filter and collecting only those EMPs considered most
22 pathogenic. The results of studies have indicated that penetration of some thoracic
23 samplers is independent of EMP length, at least up to $60 \mu\text{m}$, indicating that the
24 samplers' penetration characteristics for an EP aerosol should be no different than that of
25 an isometric aerosol. In the Jones et al. [2005] study, the relative ability of the thoracic
26 samplers to produce adequately uniform distributions of EPs on the surface of the
27 membrane filter was also tested. Based on results of these studies, two samplers
28 appeared to meet the criteria of minimal selection bias with respect to EP length and even
29 distribution on the collection filters. However, neither of these samplers has been tested
30 under conditions of field use. NIOSH is currently evaluating these two thoracic samplers
31 and the traditional cowed sampler in three different mining environments. The results
32 from the first of these environments have been published [Lee et al. 2008]. In this study,
33 one sampler provided results as expected in comparison to the standard 25-mm cowed
34 cassette, while the other did not. Additional results are required to clarify this
35 conclusion.

36 37 38 **2.5 How the Proposed Research Framework Could Lead to Improved Public Health** 39 **Policies for Asbestos Fibers and Other EMPs**

40
41 Section 2 of this document proposes several strategic goals and associated objectives for
42 a multi-disciplinary research program to further elucidate the physicochemical properties
43 of asbestos fibers and other EMPs that contribute to their pathogenicity. A major
44 component of the proposed research will be aimed at improving existing analytical tools

1 and developing new analytical tools for identifying and measuring exposures to EMPs
2 using metrics that reflect the important determinants of toxicity (e.g., dimension,
3 composition, etc.).
4

5 Results of many studies reported in the scientific literature offer some insight into
6 possible physicochemical properties of asbestos fibers and biological mechanisms
7 involved in asbestos-related human disease. Much of this evidence supports the
8 important role of particle dimension as a determinant of lung deposition and retention and
9 the concomitant role of particle composition and crystalline structure as a determinant of
10 durability and biopersistence. Despite this body of research, several fundamental issues
11 are not clearly understood and a broad systematic approach to further toxicological and
12 epidemiological research would help to reduce remaining uncertainties. Although long,
13 thin asbestos fibers clearly cause respiratory disease, the role of unregulated short (i.e.,
14 <5 μ m) asbestos fibers is not entirely clear. It also remains unclear to what extent each of
15 the various physicochemical parameters of asbestos fibers is responsible for respiratory
16 disease outcomes (e.g., asbestosis, lung cancer, and mesothelioma) observed in asbestos-
17 exposed individuals. Limited evidence from studies with other EMPs confirms the
18 importance of particle dimension and biopersistence in causing a biological response.
19 However, uncertainty remains as to whether the respiratory disease outcomes observed in
20 workers exposed to asbestos fibers can be anticipated for workers exposed to other EMPs
21 of thoracic-size and with elemental compositions similar to asbestos.
22

23 Results of much of the research to date, conducted on materials that are readily available
24 or of specific interest, should be considered in developing the research program,
25 including the specification of materials to be studied. Another important effort that can
26 inform development of the research program will involve a systematic collection and
27 review of available information on: (1) industries and occupations with exposure to
28 EMPs; (2) airborne exposure in these industries and occupations; and (3) numbers of
29 workers potentially exposed in these industries and occupations. Any additional relevant
30 minerals and mineral habits identified should also be considered. The minerals identified
31 through these efforts should be carefully and comprehensively characterized with respect
32 to both structure and elemental composition. In the characterization of minerals,
33 consideration should also be given to: (1) purity of the mineral; (2) particle morphology
34 (range of dimensions and sizes); (3) surface area; (4) surface chemistry; and (5) surface
35 reactivity. Care must be taken to ensure that a sufficient amount of the studied material is
36 available, not only for the current studies, but also as reference material for possible
37 future studies. The information developed from all of these efforts should be entered into
38 a database which can serve as a tool for selection of minerals for testing and validation of
39 toxicological tests, as well as to assist in identification of worker populations for possible
40 epidemiological studies.
41

42 An objective of the proposed research is to achieve a level of mechanistic understanding
43 that could provide a basis for developing biologically-based models for extrapolating
44 results of animal inhalation and other types of *in vivo* studies to exposure conditions

1 typically encountered in the workplace. Presently, little information exists on the
2 mechanisms by which asbestos fibers and some other EMPs produce lung cancer,
3 mesothelioma, and non-malignant respiratory diseases. As these mechanisms become
4 understood, biologically based models could be developed to extrapolate from exposure-
5 dose-response relationships observed in animals to estimates of disease risk in exposed
6 humans. In addition, such studies would provide: (1) an opportunity to measure
7 molecular and cellular outcomes that can be used to determine why one animal species
8 responds differently from another; and (2) information on EMP characteristics associated
9 with eliciting or potentiating various biological effects. The outcomes of these studies
10 can then be evaluated in subsequent experiments to provide: (1) risk assessors with the
11 various disease mechanisms by which animals respond to EMP exposures; and (2)
12 regulatory agencies and industrial hygiene and occupational health professionals with
13 information needed to implement appropriate exposure limits and programs for
14 monitoring worker exposure and health.

15
16 It is anticipated that it may be difficult to find populations of workers with exposures to
17 EMPs with characteristics (e.g., dimension, composition) of interest, that are sufficiently
18 large to provide adequate statistical power, and where exposures are unconfounded or
19 where confounding can be effectively controlled in the analysis. NIOSH has exposure
20 information and, in some cases, personal samples collected and archived from past
21 epidemiological studies of workers exposed to asbestos fibers and other EMPs. NIOSH
22 intends to explore how such existing data might be used to update and extend findings
23 from these studies. Where appropriately balanced epidemiological studies can be
24 identified, it may be possible to conduct meta-analyses to investigate important EMP
25 characteristics. The analysis of archived samples may help to elucidate how more
26 detailed characteristics of exposure (e.g., particle dimension) relate to disease outcomes.
27 New epidemiological (retrospective and prospective) studies should not be undertaken
28 unless feasibility studies (e.g., preliminary assessments of study population size, exposure
29 latencies, records of exposure, confounders, etc.) have been appropriately considered.

30
31 Because the opportunities for informative epidemiological studies are likely to be limited,
32 it will be necessary to complement them with toxicological testing, and an integrated
33 approach to toxicological research will be needed to understand how various types of
34 EMPs induce disease. Where epidemiological studies of new cohorts are possible, or
35 where epidemiological studies of previously studied cohorts can be updated, attempts
36 should be made to link their results with those of toxicological studies to assess the
37 ability of various types of toxicological testing to predict health outcomes in humans.
38 Toxicological testing should be done with attention to detailing more specific
39 information, including: (1) physical characteristics (e.g., dimension); (2) chemical
40 composition; (3) *in vitro* acellular data (dissolution, durability); and (4) *in vitro/in vivo*
41 cellular data (e.g., cytotoxicity, phagocytosis, chromosomal damage, mediator release).

42
43 To help elucidate what physicochemical properties are important for inducing a
44 biological effect, it may be necessary to generate exposures to EMPs of specific

1 dimensions and composition. Several approaches are being pursued by NIOSH to
2 overcome technological difficulties in generating sufficient quantities of well-
3 characterized and dimensionally-restricted EMPs. Efforts to grind test minerals to
4 appropriate size ranges have met with some success, but have not been consistently able
5 to generate EMPs in restricted size ranges of interest or in sufficient quantity to enable
6 toxicity testing. Another approach has used a fiber size classifier [Deye et al. 1999], but
7 this has not been able to provide quantities of EMPs large enough for long-term
8 inhalational exposure studies in animals. NIOSH researchers are currently evaluating the
9 possibility of developing a fiber size classifier with increased output to generate much
10 larger quantities of particles in restricted size-ranges for toxicological testing.

11
12 An outcome of the proposed research programs should be an understanding of the
13 relationships between and among the results of human observational studies and *in vitro*,
14 short-term *in vivo*, and long-term *in vivo* experimental studies. Any research undertaken
15 should be designed to ensure that results can be interpreted and applied within the context
16 of other studies. For example, EMPs used in long-term animal inhalation studies should
17 also be tested in *in vitro/in vivo* assay systems so that findings can be compared. The
18 results of such experiments can help to develop and standardize *in vitro/in vivo* assay
19 systems for use in predicting the potential toxicity of various types of EMPs.

20
21 Federal government agencies, organizations, and individual researchers have already
22 recommended similar research strategies for evaluating the toxicity of mineral and
23 synthetic fibers [Greim 2004; ILSI 2005; Mossman et al. 2007; Schins 2002; Vu et al.
24 1996]. These published strategies should be used as a foundation for developing a
25 research program.

26
27 Some research and improvements in sampling and analytical methods used to routinely
28 assess exposures to EMPs can be done in the short term, and as the results of the
29 toxicological and epidemiological studies provide a clearer understanding of EMP
30 characteristics that determine toxicity, it will be necessary to incorporate the results into
31 improved sampling and analytical methods. These methods should: (1) reduce the
32 subjectivity inherent in current methods of particle identification and counting; (2)
33 closely quantify EMPs based on the characteristics that are important to toxicity; and (3)
34 reduce cost and shorten turnaround times compared to current EM methods.

35
36 The toxicological, exposure assessment, and epidemiological research should be
37 conducted with the overarching goal of developing information necessary for risk
38 assessments. Improved risk assessments and analytical methodology can inform the
39 development of new and revised occupational exposure limits.

40

3 THE PATH FORWARD

1
2
3 The framework for a research agenda proposed in *Asbestos Fibers and Other Elongated*
4 *Mineral Particles: State of the Science and Roadmap for Research* will require a
5 substantial investment of time, scientific talent, and resources by NIOSH and its partners
6 to formulate research programs and prioritize research projects to achieve the proposed
7 goals. However, achieving these goals will be well worth the investment because optimal
8 occupational health protection policies for asbestos fibers and other EMPs will only be
9 based on the results of sound scientific research. As with any strategic approach, there
10 may be unintended and unforeseen consequences that will require program adjustments
11 as time goes on.

12
13 Some of the next steps will involve organizing study groups with representatives from
14 Federal agencies, industry, academia, and workers' groups to identify the specific
15 research to be done within this overarching research program. Study groups should be
16 assembled to identify the specific research elements needed to address the information
17 gaps and data needs outlined in this *Roadmap*. It may be appropriate to organize separate
18 study groups around the scientific disciplines needed to conduct the research, such as
19 epidemiology, toxicology, exposure assessment, particle characterization and analysis,
20 and risk assessment. These study groups should be maintained over the lifetime of the
21 research program to oversee and help guide the research. Also important will be
22 coordination between study groups to ensure the efforts in the various research areas are
23 complementary and move toward consistent goals and the eventual development of
24 sufficient information for risk assessment. An independent group could also be included
25 for oversight of the research programs to periodically review the research programs, help
26 keep the research programs focused on the most appropriate research, and help ensure
27 quality of the research.

28
29 The ideal outcome of a comprehensive research program for asbestos fibers and other
30 EMPs would be use the results of this research to develop recommendations for thoracic-
31 size EMPs to protect workers' health that are based on unambiguous science. Ideal
32 recommendations would specify criteria, such as a range of chemical composition,
33 dimensional attributes (e.g., ranges of length, width, and aspect ratio), dissolution
34 rate/fragility parameters, and other factors that can be used to indirectly assess the
35 toxicity of EMPs. It would be particularly advantageous if a battery of validated *in vitro*
36 or short-term *in vivo* assays could be developed that have sufficient predictive value to
37 identify EMPs that should be included in the recommendations. This would reduce the
38 need for comprehensive toxicity testing and/or epidemiological evaluation of each
39 material. Such an approach would have the advantage of identifying EMPs warranting
40 concern based on their qualities and attributes, and newly identified EMPs (and even new
41 synthetic fibers) could be compared to the criteria to determine a likelihood of toxicity.
42 Coherent risk management approaches for EMPs that fully incorporates a clear

1 understanding of the toxicity would then be developed to minimize the potential for
2 disease.

3
4 Although beyond the scope of this *Roadmap*, the extent to which a policy concerning
5 thoracic-size EMPs could be extended to SVFs and even to other manufactured materials
6 such as engineered nanomaterials, would warrant exploration. It has been noted that
7 elongated nanoscale particles (e.g., single-walled carbon nanotubes) cause interstitial
8 fibrosis in mice [Shvedova et al. 2005] and peritoneal exposure of mice to carbon
9 nanotubes has been reported to induce pathological responses similar to those caused by
10 asbestos, suggesting potential for induction of mesothelioma [Poland et al. 2008].
11 Recommendations have been made elsewhere to systematically investigate the health
12 effects of these manufactured nanomaterials within the next five years [Maynard et al.
13 2006; NIOSH 2008b]. Integrating results of nanoparticle toxicity investigations with the
14 results of the research program developed as a result of this *Roadmap* may further a
15 broader and more fundamental understanding of the determinants of toxicity of EPs.

16
17 Achieving the goals delineated in the *Roadmap* is consonant with NIOSH's statutory
18 mission to generate new knowledge in the field of occupational safety and health and to
19 transfer that knowledge into practice for the benefit of workers. Advancing knowledge
20 relevant for use in protecting workers from adverse health effects arising from exposure
21 to asbestos fibers and other EMPs is the ultimate goal. Though further scientific research
22 conducted by NIOSH researchers will continue to focus on the *occupational*
23 environment, NIOSH intends to pursue partnerships to ensure that the results of any
24 scientific research arising from the *Roadmap* can be extended to the general community
25 and the general environment.

26
27 To ensure that the scientific knowledge created from implementation of the *Roadmap* is
28 applied as broadly as possible, NIOSH plans to partner with other Federal agencies,
29 including the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR), the
30 Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), the Environmental Protection Agency
31 (EPA), the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA), the National Institute of
32 Standards and Technology (NIST), the National Institute of Environmental Health
33 Sciences (NIEHS), the National Toxicology Program (NTP), the Occupational Safety and
34 Health Administration (OSHA), and the United States Geological Survey (USGS), as
35 well as with labor, industry, academia, practitioners, and other interested parties
36 including international groups. Partnerships and collaborations will be used to help focus
37 the scope of the research to be undertaken, enhance extramural research activities, and
38 assist in the development and dissemination of educational materials describing the
39 outcomes of the research and their implications for occupational and public health
40 policies and practices.

41
42 NIOSH will be promoting integration of the research goals set forth in the *Roadmap* into
43 the industry sector-based and research-to-practice-focused National Occupational
44 Research Agenda (NORA), an agenda for the Nation involving public and private sectors.

- 1 The goals and objectives of this *Roadmap* can be substantially advanced through robust
- 2 public-private sector partnership.

4 REFERENCES

- 1
2
3 Aadchi S, Yoshida S, Kawamura K, Takahashi M, Uchida H, Odagiri Y, Taekmoto K
4 [1994]. Induction of oxidative DNA damage and mesothelioma by crocidolite with
5 special reference to the presence of iron inside and outside of asbestos fiber.
6 Carcinogenesis 15:753–758.
7
8 Addison J [2007]. Letter communication to the NIOSH Docket Office for Docket number
9 NIOSH-099. [[http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docket/pdfs/NIOSH-099/0099-052707-](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docket/pdfs/NIOSH-099/0099-052707-addison_sub.pdf)
10 [addison_sub.pdf](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docket/pdfs/NIOSH-099/0099-052707-addison_sub.pdf)]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
11
12 Addison J, McConnell EE [2008]. A review of carcinogenicity studies of asbestos and
13 non-asbestos tremolite and other amphiboles. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 52(Suppl 1):
14 S187-S199.
15
16 Aderem A [2002]. How to eat something bigger than your head. Cell 110:5–8.
17
18 Allison AC, Ferluga J [1977]. Cell membranes in cytotoxicity. Adv Exp Med Biol
19 84:231–246.
20
21 Amandus HE, Wheeler R [1987]. The morbidity and mortality of vermiculite miners and
22 millers exposed to tremolite–actinolite: Part II. Mortality. Am J Ind Med 11:15–26.
23
24 Amandus HE, Althouse R, Morgan WK, Sargent EN, Jones R [1987a]. The morbidity
25 and mortality of vermiculite miners and millers exposed to tremolite-actinolite: Part III.
26 Radiographic findings. Am J Ind Med 11:27–37.
27
28 Amandus HE, Wheeler R, Jankovic J, Tucker J [1987b]. The morbidity and mortality of
29 vermiculite miners and millers exposed to tremolite–actinolite. Part I: Exposure
30 estimates. Am J Ind Med 11:1–14.
31
32 Anonymous [1997]. Asbestos, asbestosis, and cancer: the Helsinki criteria for diagnosis
33 and attribution. Scand J Work Environ Health 23:311–316.
34
35 Ansari FA, Ahmad I, Ashqain M, Yunus M, Rahman Q [2007]. Monitoring and
36 identification of airborne asbestos in unorganized sectors, India. Chemosphere 68:716–
37 723.
38
39 Asgharian B, Yu CP [1988]. Deposition of inhaled fibrous particles in the human lung. J
40 Aerosol Med 1:37–50.
41
42 ASTM (American Society of Testing Materials) [2006]. Work Item WK3160 "New
43 Standard Test Method for Sampling and Counting Airborne Fibers, Including Asbestos

1 Fibers, in Mines and Quarries, by Phase Contrast Microscopy," ASTM International,
2 West Conshohocken, PA.

3
4 ATS (American Thoracic Society) [2004]. Diagnosis and initial management of
5 nonmalignant diseases related to asbestos. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 170:691–715.
6 [<http://www.thoracic.org/sections/publications/statements/pages/eoh/asbestos.html>]. Date
7 accessed: June 30, 2008.

8
9 ATSDR (Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry) [2001]. Toxicological
10 profile for asbestosis. [<http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp61.html>]. Date accessed:
11 January 26, 2007.

12
13 ATSDR (Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry) [2003]. Report on the
14 expert panel on health effects of asbestos and synthetic vitreous fibers: The influence of
15 fiber length. Report prepared by Eastern Research Group, Inc.
16 [<http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/HAC/asbestospanel/>]. Date accessed: January 26, 2007.

17
18 Aung W, Hasegawa S, Furukawa T, Saga T [2007]. Potential role of ferritin heavy chain
19 in oxidative stress and apoptosis in human mesothelial and mesothelioma cells:
20 implications for asbestos-induced oncogenesis. Carcinogenesis 28:2047–2052.

21
22 Axelson O [1989]. Confounding from smoking in occupational epidemiology. Br J Ind
23 Med 46:505–507.

24
25 Bang KM, Pinheiro GA, Wood JM, Syamlal G [2006]. Malignant mesothelioma
26 mortality in the United States, 1999–2001. Int J Occup Environ Health 12:9–15.

27
28 Baron P [1996]. Application of the thoracic sampling definition to fiber measurement.
29 Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 57:820–824.

30
31 Barrett CJ [1994]. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of asbestos carcinogenicity:
32 implications for biopersistence. Environ Health Perspect 102:19–23.

33
34 Beckett ST, Jarvis JL [1979]. A study of the size distribution of airborne amosite fibers in
35 the manufacture of asbestos insulating boards. Ann Occup Hyg 22:273–284.

36
37 Bellmann B, Muhle H, Pott F, Konig H, Kloppel H, Spurny K [1987]. Persistence of
38 man-made mineral fibres (MMMf) and asbestos in rat lungs. Ann Occup Hyg 31:693–
39 709.

40
41 Bergstrand H [1990]. The generation of reactive oxygen-derived species by phagocytes.
42 Agents Actions Suppl 30:199–211.

43

- 1 Berman DW, Crump KS, Chatfield EJ, Davis JMG, Jones AD [1995]. The sizes, shapes,
2 and mineralogy of asbestos structures that induce lung tumors or mesothelioma in
3 AF/HAN rats following inhalation. *Risk Anal* 15:181–195.
4
- 5 Bernstein DM, Morscheidt C, Grimm HG, Thevenaz P, Teichert U [1996]. Evaluation of
6 soluble fibers using the inhalation biopersistence model, a nine-fiber comparison. *Inhal*
7 *Toxicol* 8:345–385.
8
- 9 Bernstein DM, Sintes JMR, Ersboell BK, Kunert J [2001]. Biopersistence of synthetic
10 mineral fibers as a predictor of chronic inhalation toxicity in rats. *Inhal Toxicol* 13:823–
11 849.
12
- 13 Bernstein DM, Donaldson K, Decker U, Gaering S, Kunzendorf P, Chevalier J, Holm SE
14 [2008]. Biopersistence study following exposure to chrysotile asbestos alone or in
15 combination with fine particles. *Inhal Toxicol* 20:1009-1028.
16
- 17 Bertino P, Marconi A, Palumbo L, Bruni BM, Barbone D, Germano S, Dogan AU, Tassi
18 GF, Porta C, Mutti L, Gaudino G [2007]. Erionite and asbestos differently cause
19 transformation of human mesothelial cells. *Int J Cancer* 121:12–20.
20
- 21 Blake T, Castranova V, Schwegler-Berry D, Baron P, Deye GJ, Li C, Jones W [1998].
22 Effect of fiber length on glass microfiber cytotoxicity. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 54:243–
23 259.
24
- 25 Boettcher AL [1966]. The Rainy Creek igneous complex near Libby, Montana [PhD
26 dissertation]. University Park, PA, The Pennsylvania State University.
27
- 28 Bonneau L, Malard C, Pezerat H [1986]. Role of dimensional characteristics and surface
29 properties of mineral fibers in the induction of pleural tumors. *Environ Res* 41:268–275.
30
- 31 Brain JD, Godleski J, Kreyling W [1994]. *In vivo* evaluation of chemical biopersistence
32 of nonfibrous inorganic particles. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 5):119–125.
33
- 34 British Thoracic Society Standards of Care Committee [2001]. Statement on malignant
35 mesothelioma in the United Kingdom. *Thorax* 56:250–265.
36
- 37 Brody AR, Hill LH [1983]. Interactions of chrysotile asbestos with erythrocyte
38 membranes. *Environ Health Perspect* 51:85–89.
39
- 40 Brown DM, Beswick PH, Donaldson K [1999]. Induction of nuclear translocation of NF-
41 κ B in epithelial cells by respirable mineral fibres. *J Pathol* 189:258–264.
42
- 43 Brown DP, Dement JM, Wagoner JK [1979]. Mortality patterns among miners and
44 millers occupationally exposed to asbestiform talc. In: Lemen R, Dement J, eds. *Dusts*

1 and Disease: Occupational and Environmental Exposures to Selected Fibrous and
2 Particulate Dusts. Park Forest South, IL: Pathotox Publishers, Inc., pp. 317–324.

3
4 Brown DP, Sanderson W, Fine LJ [1990]. NIOSH Health Hazard Evaluation Report. R.
5 T. Vanderbilt Company, Gouverneur, New York. HETA 90-390-2065, MHETA 86-012-
6 2065. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/hhe/reports/pdfs/1990-0390-2065.pdf>]. Date accessed:
7 June 30, 2008.

8
9 Brown DP, Kaplan SD, Zumwalde RD, Kaplowitz M, Archer VE [1986]. Retrospective
10 cohort mortality study of underground gold mine workers. In: Goldsmith D, Winn D, Shy
11 C, eds. Silica, Silicosis, and Lung Cancer. New York: Praeger, pp. 335–350.

12
13 Brunner WM, Williams AN, Bender AP [2008]. Investigation of exposures to
14 commercial asbestos in northeastern Minnesota iron miners who developed
15 mesothelioma. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 52(Suppl 1):S116–S120

16
17 Campbell WJ, Steel EB, Virta RL, Eisner MH [1979]. Relationship of mineral habit to
18 size characteristics of tremolite cleavage fragments and fibers. US Department of the
19 Interior, Bureau of Mines Report of Investigations #8367.

20
21 Carbone M, Bedrossian CW [2006]. The pathogenesis of mesothelioma. Semin Diagn
22 Pathol 23:56–60.

23
24 Carbone M, Kratzke RA, Testa JR [2002]. The pathogenesis of mesothelioma. Semin
25 Oncol 29:2–17.

26
27 Cardinali G, Kovacs D, Maresca V, Flori E, Dell'Anna ML, Campopiano A, Casciardi S,
28 Spagnoli G, Torrissi MR, Picardo M [2006]. Differential *in vitro* cellular response induced
29 by exposure to synthetic vitreous fibers (SVFs) and asbestos crocidolite fibers. Exp Mol
30 Pathol 81:31–41.

31
32 Chen C, Baron PA [1996]. Aspiration efficiency and wall deposition in the fiber
33 sampling cassette. Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 57:142–152.

34
35 Chen W, Hnizdo E, Chen JQ, Attfield MD, Gao P, Hearl F, Lu J, Wallace WE [2005].
36 Risk of silicosis in cohorts of Chinese tin and tungsten miners, and pottery workers (I): an
37 epidemiological study. Am J Ind Med 48:1–9.

38
39 Churg A, Stevens B [1995]. Enhanced retention of asbestos fibers in the airways of
40 human smokers. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 151:1409–1413.

41
42 Churg A, Wright JL, Hobson J, Stevens B [1992]. Effects of cigarette smoke on the
43 clearance of short asbestos fibres from the lung and a comparison with the clearance of
44 long asbestos fibres. Int J Exp Pathol 73:287–297.

- 1
2 Cooper WC, Wong O, Graebner R [1988]. Mortality of workers in two Minnesota
3 taconite mining and milling operations. *J Occup Med* 30:506–511.
4
5 Cooper WC, Wong O, Trent LS, Harris F [1992]. An updated study of taconite miners
6 and millers exposed to silica and nonasbestiform amphiboles. *J Occup Med* 34:1173–
7 1180.
8
9 Crawford NP, Thorpe HL, Alexander W [1982]. A Comparison of the Effects of
10 Different Counting Rules and Aspect Ratios on the Level and Reproducibility of
11 Asbestos Fiber Counts. Part I: Effects on Level. Institute of Occupational Medicine,
12 Edinburgh, UK.
13
14 Cullen MR [2005]. Serum osteopontin levels—Is it time to screen asbestos-exposed
15 workers for pleural mesothelioma. *N Engl J Med* 353:1617–1618.
16
17 Cullen RT, Miller BG, Davis JMG, Brown DM, Donaldson K [1997]. Short-term
18 inhalation and *in vitro* tests as predictors of fiber pathogenicity. *Environ Health Perspect*
19 105:1235–1240.
20
21 Cummins AB, Palmer C, Mossman BT, Taatjes DJ [2003]. Persistent localization of
22 activated extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK1/2) is epithelial cell-specific in an
23 inhalation model of asbestosis. *Am J Pathol* 162:713–720.
24
25 Dai YT, Yu CP [1988]. Alveolar deposition of fibers in rodents and humans. *J Aerosol*
26 *Med* 11:247–258.
27
28 Davis JMG [1994]. The role of clearance and dissolution in determining the durability or
29 biopersistence of mineral fibers. *Environ Health Perspect* 102:113–117.
30
31 Davis JM, Addison J, Bolton RE, Donaldson K, Jones AD [1986]. Inhalation and
32 injection studies in rats using dust samples from chrysotile asbestos prepared by a wet
33 dispersion process. *Br J Exp Pathol* 67:113–129.
34
35 Davis JM, Addison J, McIntosh C, Miller BG, Niven K [1991]. Variations in the
36 carcinogenicity of tremolite dust samples of differing morphology. *Ann NY Acad Sci*
37 643:473–490.
38
39 Davis LK, Martin TR, Kligler B [1992]. Use of death certificates for mesothelioma
40 surveillance. *Public Health Rep* 107:481–483.
41
42 Davis JMG, Brown DM, Cullen RT, Donaldson K, Jones AD, Miller BC, McIntosh C,
43 Searl A [1996]. A comparison of methods of determining and predicting the
44 pathogenicity of mineral fibers. *Inhal Toxicol* 8:747–770.

- 1
2 Dement JM, Wallingford KE [1990]. Comparison of phase contrast and electron
3 microscopic methods for evaluation of occupational asbestos exposures. *Appl Occup*
4 *Environ Hyg* 5:242–247.
5
6 Dement JM, Brown DP, Okun A [1994]. Follow-up study of chrysotile asbestos textile
7 workers: cohort mortality and case-control analyses. *Am J Ind Med* 26:431–447.
8
9 Dement JM, Kuempel E, Zumwalde R, Smith R, Stayner L, Loomis D [2008].
10 Development of a fibre size-specific job-exposure matrix for airborne asbestos fibres.
11 *Occup Environ Med* 65: 605–612.
12
13 Dement JM, Zumwalde RD, Wallingford KM [1976]. Discussion paper: Asbestos fiber
14 exposures in a hard rock gold mine. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 271:345–352.
15
16 De Vuyst P, Karjalainen A, Dumortier P, Pairon J-C, Monsó E, Brochard P,
17 Teschler H, Tossavainen A, Gibbs A [1998]. Guidelines for mineral fibre analyses in
18 biological samples: report of the ERS Working Group. *Eur Respir J* 11:1416–1426.
19
20 De Vuyst P, Gevenois PA [2002]. Asbestosis. In: Hendrick DJ, Burge PS, Beckett WS,
21 Churg A, eds. *Occupational Disorders of the Lung: Recognition, Management, and*
22 *Prevention*. Oxford, UK: WB Saunders, pp. 143–162.
23
24 Deye GJ, Gao P, Baron PA, Fernback J [1999]. Performance evaluation of a fiber length
25 classifier. *Aerosol Sci Technol* 30:420–437.
26
27 Dodson RF, Atkinson MAL, Levin JL [2003]. Asbestos fiber length as related to
28 potential pathogenicity: A critical review. *Am J Ind Med* 44:291–297.
29
30 Donaldson K, Tran CL [2002]. Inflammation caused by particles and fibers. *Inhal*
31 *Toxicol* 14:5-27.
32
33 Ding M, Dong Z, Chen F, Pack D, Ma WY, Ye J, Shi X, Castranova V, Vallyathan V
34 [1999]. Asbestos induces activator protein-1 transactivation in transgenic mice. *Cancer*
35 *Res* 59:1884–1889.
36
37 Driscoll KE, Carter JM, Borm PJA [2002]. Antioxidant defense mechanisms and the
38 toxicity of fibrous and nonfibrous particles. *Inhal Toxicol* 14:101-118.
39
40 Driscoll KE, Carter JM, Howard BW, Hassenbein D, Janssen YM, Mossman BT [1998].
41 Crocidolite activates NF- κ B and MIP-2 gene expression in rat alveolar epithelial cells.
42 Role of mitochondrial-derived oxidants. *Environ Health Perspect* 106(Suppl 5):1171–
43 1174.
44

1 Drumm K, Messner C, Kienast K [1999]. Reactive oxygen intermediate-release of fibre-
2 exposed monocytes increases inflammatory cytokine-mRNA level, protein tyrosine
3 kinase and NF- κ B activity in co-cultured bronchial epithelial cells (BEAS-2B). Eur J
4 Med Res 4:257–263.

5
6 Egerton RF [2005]. Physical Principles of Electron Microscopy: An Introduction to
7 TEM, SEM, and AEM. Springer, 202 pp.

8
9 Enterline PE, Henderson VL [1987]. Geographic patterns for pleural mesothelioma
10 deaths in the United States, 1968–81. J Natl Cancer Inst 79:31–37.

11
12 EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency) [1986]. Airborne asbestos health
13 assessment update. Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of
14 Health and Environment Assessment. EPA/600/8-84/003F.
15 [<http://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyNET.exe/20009EBT.TXT?ZyActionD=ZyDocument&Client=EPA&Index=1981+Thru+1985&Docs=&Query=&Time=&EndTime=&SearchMethod=1&TocRestrict=n&Toc=&TocEntry=&QField=pubnumber%5E%22600884003F%22&QFieldYear=&QFieldMonth=&QFieldDay=&UseQField=pubnumber&IntQFieldOp=1&ExtQFieldOp=1&XmlQuery=&File=D%3A%5Czyfiles%5CIndex%20Data%5C81thru85%5CTXT%5C00000002%5C20009EBT.TXT&User=ANONYMOUS&Password=anonymous&SortMethod=h%7C-&MaximumDocuments=10&FuzzyDegree=0&ImageQuality=r75g8/r75g8/x150y150g16/i425&Display=p%7Cf&DefSeekPage=x&SearchBack=ZyActionL&Back=ZyActionS&BackDesc=Results%20page&MaximumPages=1&ZyEntry=1&SeekPage=x>]. Date
25 accessed: June 30, 2008.

26
27 EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency) [1987]. Asbestos-containing materials in
28 schools; final rule and notice. 40 CFR Part 763. Fed Regist 52:41826–41905.

29
30 EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency) [2000]. Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and
31 Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) FIFRA Scientific Advisory Panel Meeting, September 26,
32 2000. Test Guidelines for Chronic Inhalation Toxicity and Carcinogenicity of Fibrous
33 Particles, SAP Report N. 2001-01, January 5, 2001.
34 [http://www.epa.gov/scipoly/sap/meetings/2000/september/final_fibers.pdf]. Date
35 accessed: November 16, 2006.

36
37 EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency) [2003]. Report on the Peer Consultation
38 Workshop to Discuss a Proposed Protocol to Assess Asbestos-Related Risk, Final Report.
39 Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response, Washington D.C. p. viii.
40 [http://www.epa.gov/oswer/riskassessment/asbestos/pdfs/asbestos_report.pdf]. Data
41 accessed: June 30, 2008.

- 1 European Commission [1997]. Commission Directive 97/69/EC of 5.XII.97 (23
2 adaptation) O.J. L 343/1997.
3
- 4 European Commission [1999]. Sub-chronic inhalation toxicity of synthetic mineral fibres
5 in rats (ECB/TM/16 (97) Rev 1). In: Bernstein DM, Riego-Sintes JM, eds. Methods for
6 the determination of the hazardous properties for human health of man made mineral
7 fibres (MMMMF). European Commission Joint Research Centre, report EUR 18748 EN
8 (1999). [<http://ecb.jrc.it/testing-methods>]. Date accessed: November 16, 2006.
9
- 10 European Parliament and Council [2003]. Directive 2003/18/EC of the European
11 Parliament and of the Council of 27 March 2003 amending Council Directive
12 83/477/EEC on the protection of workers from the risks related to exposure to asbestos at
13 work. Official Journal of the European Union, 15 April 2003, L97/48-52.
14
- 15 Faux SP, Houghton CE, Hubbard A, Patrick G [2000]. Increased expression of epidermal
16 growth factor receptor in rat pleural mesothelial cells correlates with carcinogenicity of
17 mineral fibres. *Carcinogenesis* 21:2275–2280.
18
- 19 Faux SP, Howden PJ, Levy LS [1994]. Iron-dependent formation of 8-
20 hydroxydeoxyguanosine in isolated DNA and mutagenicity in *Salmonella typhimurium*
21 TA102 induced by crocidolite. *Carcinogenesis* 15:1749–1751.
22
- 23 Franzblau A, Kazerooni EA, Sen A, Goodsitt M, Lee S-Y, Rosenman K, Lockey J,
24 Meyer C, Gillespie B, Wang ML, Petsonk EL [2006]. Comparison of digital radiographs
25 with film-screen radiographs for classification of pneumoconiosis. Presented,
26 International Commission on Occupational Health (ICOH) Conference, Milan, Italy, June
27 2006.
28
- 29 Fubini B [1993]. The possible role of surface chemistry in the toxicity of inhaled fibers.
30 In: Warheit DB, ed., *Fiber Toxicology*. Boston: Academic Press, pp. 229–257.
31
- 32 Gamble JF [1993]. A nested case control study of lung cancer among New York talc
33 workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health* 64:449–456.
34
- 35 Gamble JF, Gibbs GW [2008]. An evaluation of the risks of lung cancer and mesothelioma
36 from exposure to amphibole cleavage fragments. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 52:S154–
37 S186.
38
- 39 Gendek EG, Brody AR [1990]. Changes in lipid ordering of model phospholipid
40 membranes treated with chrysotile and crocidolite asbestos. *Environ Res* 53:152–167.
41
- 42 Gillam J, Dement J, Lemen R, Wagoner J, Archer V, Blejer H [1976]. Mortality patterns
43 among hard rock gold miners exposed to an asbestiform mineral. *Ann NY Acad Sci*
44 271:336–344.

- 1
2 Gilmour PS, Beswick PH, Brown DM, Donaldson K [1995]. Detection of surface free
3 radical activity of respirable industrial fibers using supercoiled phi X174 plasmid DNA.
4 Carcinogenesis 16:2973–2979.
5
6 Goldstein J [2003]. Scanning Electron Microscopy and X-ray Microanalysis. Kluwer
7 Academic/Plenum Publishers, 689 pp.
8
9 Goodglick LA, Kane AB [1986]. Role of reactive oxygen metabolites in crocidolite
10 asbestos toxicity to mouse macrophages. Cancer Res 46:5558–5566.
11
12 Green GM [1973]. Alveolobronchiolar transport mechanisms. Arch Intern Med 131:109–
13 114.
14
15 Green FHY, Harley R, Vallyathan V, Althouse R, Fick G, Dement J, Mitha R, Pooley F
16 [1997]. Exposure and mineralogical correlates of pulmonary fibrosis in chrysotile
17 asbestos workers. Occup Environ Med 54:549–559.
18
19 Greim HA [2004]. Research needs to improve risk assessment of fiber toxicity. Mut Res
20 553:11–22.
21
22 Griffis LC, Pickrell JA, Carpenter RL, Wolff RK, McAllen SJ, Yerkes, KL [1983].
23 Deposition of crocidolite asbestos and glass microfibers inhaled by the beagle dog. Am
24 Ind Hyg Assoc J 44:216–222.
25
26 Gross P, DeTreville RT, Tolker EB, Kaschak M, Babyak MA [1967]. Experimental
27 asbestosis. The development of lung cancer in rats with pulmonary deposits of chrysotile
28 asbestos dust. Arch Environ Health 15:343–355.
29
30 Guthrie GD [1997]. Mineral properties and their contributions to particle toxicity.
31 Environ Health Perspect 105(Suppl 5):1003–1011.
32
33 Hansen K, Mossman B [1987]. Generation of superoxide (O₂^{-·}) from alveolar
34 macrophages exposed to asbestiform and nonfibrous particles. Cancer Res 47:1681–
35 1686.
36
37 Harper M (mharper@cdc.gov) [2008]. Fibers proficiency test project update. Private e-
38 mail message to Paul Middendorf (pkm2@cdc.gov), April 29.
39
40 Harper M, Bartolucci A [2003]. Preparation and examination of proposed consensus
41 reference standards for fiber-counting. AIHA J 64:283–287.
42
43

- 1 Harper M, Lee EG, Harvey B, Beard M [2007]. The effect of a proposed change to fiber-
2 counting rules in ASTM International Standard D7200-06. *J Occup Environ Hyg* 4:D42–
3 45.
4
- 5 Harper M, Slaven JE, Pang TWS [2008a]. Continued participation in an asbestos fiber-
6 counting proficiency test with relocatable grid slides. Morgantown, WV: Unpublished.
7
- 8 Harper M, Lee EG, Doorn SS, Hammond O [2008b]. Differentiating non-asbestiform
9 amphibole and amphibole asbestos by size characteristics. *J Occup Environ Hyg* 5:761–
10 770
- 11 Hansen K, Mossman B [1987]. Generation of superoxide (O₂⁻) from alveolar
12 macrophages exposed to asbestiform and nonfibrous particles. *Cancer Res* 47:1681–
13 1686.
14
- 15 HEI (Health Effects Institute) – Asbestos Research [1991]. Asbestos in public and
16 commercial buildings: A literature review and synthesis of current knowledge.
17 Cambridge, MA. [<http://www.asbestos-institute.ca/reviews/hei-ar/hei-ar.html>]. Date
18 accessed: June 30, 2008.
19
- 20 Hein M, Stayner LT, Lehman E, Dement J [2007]. Follow-up study of chrysotile textile
21 workers: cohort mortality and exposure response. *Occup Environ Med* 64:616–625.
22
- 23 Henderson DW, Jones ML, deKlerk N, Leigh J, Musk AW, Shilkin KB, Williams VM
24 [2004]. The diagnosis and attribution of asbestos-related diseases in an Australian
25 context. *Int J Occup Environ Health* 10:40–46.
26
- 27 Hesterberg TW, Barrett JC [1984]. Dependence of asbestos- and mineral dust-induced
28 transformation of mammalian cells in culture on fiber dimension. *Cancer Res* 44:2170–
29 2180.
30
- 31 Hesterberg TW, Hart GA [2000]. Lung biopersistence and *in vitro* dissolution rate predict
32 the pathogenic potential of synthetic vitreous fibers. *Inhal Toxicol* 31:91–97.
33
- 34 HHS (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services) [2005a]. National Toxicology
35 Program Report on Carcinogens, Eleventh Edition. Washington, DC.
36 <http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/ntp/roc/eleventh/profiles/s016asbe.pdf>. Date accessed: December
37 28, 2006.
38
- 39 HHS (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services) [2005b]. National Toxicology
40 Program Report on Carcinogens, Eleventh Edition. Washington, DC.
41 [<http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/ntp/roc/eleventh/profiles/s083erio.pdf>]. Date accessed:
42 November 16, 2006.
43

- 1 Higgins ITT, Glassman JH, Oh MS, and Cornell RG [1983]. Mortality of Reserve Mining
2 Company employees in relation to taconite dust exposure. *Am J Epidemiol* 118:710–719.
3
- 4 Hill GD, Mangum JB, Moss OR, Everitt JI [2003]. Soluble ICAM-1, MCP-1, and MIP-2
5 protein secretion by rat pleural mesothelial cells following exposure to amosite asbestos.
6 *Exp Lung Res* 29:277–290.
7
- 8 Hill IM, Beswick PH, Donaldson K [1996]. Enhancement of the macrophage oxidative
9 burst by immunoglobulin coating of respirable fibers: fiber-specific differences between
10 asbestos and man-made fibers. *Exp Lung Res* 22:133–148.
11
- 12 Hnizdo E, Sluis-Cremer GK [1991]. Silica exposure, silicosis, and lung cancer: a
13 mortality study of South African gold miners. *Br J Ind Med* 48:53–60.
14
- 15 Hodgson JT, Darnton H [2000]. The quantitative risks of mesothelioma and lung cancer
16 in relation to asbestos exposure. *Ann Occup Hyg* 44:565–601.
17
- 18 Hochella MF [1993]. Surface chemistry, structure, and reactivity of hazardous mineral
19 dust. In: Guthrie GD, Mossman BT, eds. *Health Effects of Mineral Dusts*. Washington,
20 DC: Mineralogical Society of America, *Reviews in Mineralogy* Vol 28, pp. 275–308.
21
- 22 Holmes S [1965]. Developments in dust sampling and counting techniques in the
23 asbestos industry. *Ann. NY Acad Sci* 132:288–297.
24
- 25 Honda Y, Beall C, Delzell E, Oestenstad K, Brill I, Matthews R [2002]. Mortality among
26 workers at a talc mining and milling facility. *Ann Occup Hyg* 46:575–585.
27
- 28 HSE (Health and Safety Executive) [1995]. *Asbestos Fibres in Air: Sampling and*
29 *Evaluation by Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) under the Control of Asbestos at Work*
30 *Regulations (MDHS 39/4)*. Sudbury: HSE Books
31
- 32 Hull MJ, Abraham JL, Case BW [2002]. Mesothelioma among workers in asbestiform
33 fiver-bearing talc mines in New York State. *Ann Occup Hyg* 46:132–132.
34
- 35 Hume LA, Rimstidt JD [1992]. The biodurability of chrysotile asbestos. *Am Mineral*
36 77:1125–1128.
37
- 38 Huuskonen O, Kivisaari L, Zitting A, Taskinen K, Tossavainen A, Vehmas T [2001].
39 High-resolution computed tomography classification of lung fibrosis for patients with
40 asbestos-related disease. *Scand J Work Environ Health* 27:106–112.
41
- 42 Iakhiaev A, Pendurthi U, Idell S [2004]. Asbestos induces tissue factor in Beas-2B
43 human lung bronchial epithelial cells *in vitro*. *Lung* 182:251–264.
44

- 1 IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer) [1977]. IARC Monographs on the
2 Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man, Vol. 14, Asbestos, Lyon, France
3 pp. 11–106.
4
- 5 IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer) [1987a]. IARC Monographs on the
6 Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans, Vol. 42, Silica and Some
7 Silicates, Lyon, France pp. 33–249.
8
- 9 IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer) [1987b]. IARC Monographs on the
10 Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Suppl. 7, Overall Evaluations of
11 Carcinogenicity: An Updating of IARC Monographs, Vols. 1–42, Lyon, France pp. 106–
12 117, 203.
13
- 14 IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer) [1997]. IARC Monographs on the
15 Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Vol. 68, Silica, Some Silicates, Coal Dust
16 and Para-aramid fibrils. Lyon, France pp. 41–242.
17
- 18 IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer) [2002]. IARC Monographs on the
19 Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans: Man-made Vitreous Fibers. Vol. 81. Lyon,
20 France. [<http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol81/mono81.pdf>]. Date accessed:
21 June 30, 2008.
22
- 23 Ilgren EB, Browne K [1991]. Asbestos-related mesothelioma: evidence for a threshold in
24 animals and humans. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 13:116–132.
25
- 26 ILO (International Labour Office) [2002]. Guidelines for the Use of the ILO International
27 Classification of Radiographs of Pneumoconioses, Revised Edition 2000 (Occupational
28 Safety and Health Series, No. 22). International Labour Office: Geneva.
29
- 30 ILSI (International Life Sciences Institute) [2005]. Testing of fibrous particles: short-term
31 assays and strategies. Report of an ILSI Risk Science Institute Working Group. *Inhal*
32 *Toxicol* 17:497–537.
33
- 34 IMA-NA (Industrial Minerals Association-North America) [2005]. Submission to MSHA
35 RIN 1219-AB24 - Proposed Rule - Asbestos Exposure Limit. November 21, 2005.
36 [<http://www.msha.gov/regs/comments/05-14510/1219-ab24-comm-107.pdf>]. Date
37 accessed: June 30, 2008.
38
- 39 IOM (Institute of Medicine of the National Academies) Committee on Asbestos: Selected
40 Health Effects [2006]. Asbestos: Selected Cancers. The National Academies Press,
41 Washington, DC. [http://books.nap.edu/openbook.php?record_id=11665&page=R1].
42 Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
43

- 1 ISO (International Organization for Standardization) [1993]. Air quality—Determination
2 of the number concentration of airborne inorganic fibres by phase contrast optical
3 microscopy - membrane filter method. ISO 8672, ISO Geneva.
4
- 5 ISO (International Organization for Standardization) [1995]. Ambient air – determination
6 of asbestos fibres —direct-transfer transmission electron microscopy method. ISO 10312,
7 ISO Geneva.
8
- 9 ISO (International Organization for Standardization) [1999]. Ambient air – determination
10 of asbestos fibres —indirect-transfer transmission electron microscopy method. ISO
11 13794, ISO Geneva.
12
- 13 Iwagaki A, Choe N, Li Y, Hemenway DR, Kagan E [2003]. Asbestos inhalation induces
14 tyrosine nitration associated with extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 activation in
15 the rat lung. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 28:51–60.
16
- 17 Janssen Y, Heintz N, Marsh J, Borm P, Mossman B [1994]. Induction of c-fos and c-jun
18 proto-oncogenes in target cells of the lung and pleura by carcinogenic fibers. *Am J Respir
19 Cell Mol Biol* 11:522–530.
20
- 21 Järveholm B, Englund A, Albin M [1999]. Pleural mesothelioma in Sweden: an analysis of
22 the incidence according to the use of asbestos. *Occup Environ Med* 56:110–113.
23
- 24 Jaurand MC [1991]. Mechanisms of fiber genotoxicity. In: Brown RC, Hoskins JA,
25 Johnson NF, eds. *Mechanisms in Fiber Carcinogenesis*. New York: Plenum, pp. 287–307.
26
- 27 Jaurand MC [1997]. Mechanisms of fiber-induced genotoxicity. *Environ Health Perspect*
28 105 (Suppl 5):1073–1084.
29
- 30 Jaurand MC, Baillif P, Thomassin JH, Magne L, Touray JC [1983]. X-ray photoelectron
31 spectroscopy and chemical study of the adsorption of biological molecules on the
32 chrysotile asbestos surface. *J Colloid Interface Sci* 95:1–9.
33
- 34 Jaurand MC, Thomassin JH, Baillif P, Magne L, Touray JC, Bignon J [1980]. Chemical
35 and photoelectron spectrometry analysis of the adsorption of phospholipid model
36 membranes and red blood cell membranes on to chrysotile fibres. *Br J Ind Med* 37:169–
37 174.
38
- 39 Jones AD, Aitken RJ, Fabriès JF, Kauffer E, Lidén G, Maynard A, Riediger G, Sahle W
40 [2005]. Thoracic size-selective sampling of fibres: performance of four types of thoracic
41 sampler in laboratory tests. *Ann Occup Hyg* 49:481–492.
42

- 1 Jones HA, Hamacher K, Hill AA, Clark JC, Krausz T, Boobis AR, Haslett C [1997]. 18-F
2 fluoropropylene (18FP) uptake monitored *in vivo* in a rabbit model of pulmonary fibrosis.
3 [Abstract]. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 155:A185.
4
- 5 Jurinski JB, Rimstidt JD [2001]. Biodurability of talc. Am Mineral 86:392–399.
6
- 7 Kane AB [1991]. Fiber dimensions and mesothelioma: a reappraisal of the Stanton
8 hypothesis. In: Brown RC, Hoskins, JA Johnson NF, eds. Mechanisms in Fibre
9 Carcinogenesis. New York: Plenum, pp. 131–141.
10
- 11 Kane AB [1996]. Mechanisms of mineral fibre carcinogenesis. In: Kane AB, Saracci R,
12 Weilbourn JD, eds. Mechanisms of Fibre Carcinogenesis, Lyon, France, International
13 Agency for Research on Cancer, IARC Science Publications No. 140, pp. 11–34.
14
- 15 Keane MJ, Stephens JW, Zhong BZ, Miller WE, Wallace WE [1999]. A study of the
16 effect of chrysotile fiber surface composition on genotoxicity *in vitro*. J Toxicol Environ
17 Health 57:529–541.
18
- 19 Kelse JW [2005]. White Paper: Asbestos, health risk and tremolitic talc. RT Vanderbilt
20 Co. Inc., Norwalk, CT.
21
- 22 Kenny LC, Rood AP [1987]. A direct measurement of the visibility of amosite asbestos
23 fibres by phase contrast optical microscopy. Ann Occup Hyg 31:261–264.
24
- 25 Kleinfeld M, Messite J, Kooyman O, Zaki M [1967]. Mortality among talc miners and
26 millers in New York State. Arch Environ Health 14:663–667.
27
- 28 Kleinfeld M, Messite J, Tabershaw IR [1955]. Talc pneumoconiosis. AMA Arch Ind
29 Health 12:66–72.
30
- 31 Kleinfeld M, Messite J, Zacki MH [1974]. Mortality experiences among talc workers: a
32 followup study. J Occup Med 16:345–349.
33
- 34 Kraus T, Raithel HJ, Hering KG, Lehnert G [1996]. Evaluation and classification of high-
35 resolution computed tomographic findings in patients with pneumoconiosis. Int Arch
36 Occup Environ Health 68:249–254.
37
- 38 Kuempel ED, O’Flaherty EJ, Stayner LT, Smith RJ, Green FHY, Vallyathan V [2001]. A
39 biomathematical model of particle clearance and retention in the lungs of coal miners:
40 Part I. Model development. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 34:69–87.
41
- 42 Kuempel ED, Stayner LT, Dement JD, Gilbert SJ, Hein MJ [2006]. Fiber size-specific
43 exposure estimates and updated mortality analysis of chrysotile asbestos textile workers.
44 [Abstract #349]. Toxicol Sci 90:71.

- 1
2 Lamm SH, Starr JA. [1988] Similarities in lung cancer and respiratory disease mortality
3 of Vermont and New York State talc workers. In: Proceedings of the VIIth International
4 Pneumoconioses Conference, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 90-108 Part II, pp1576-
5 1581.
6
7 Lamm SH, Levine MS, Starr JA, Tirey SL [1988]. Analysis of excess lung cancer risk in
8 short-term employees. *Am J Epidemiol* 127:1202–1209.
9
10 Langer AM, Nolan RP, and Addison J [1991]. Distinguishing between amphibole
11 asbestos fibers and elongate cleavage fragments of their non-asbestos analogues. In:
12 Brown RC, Hoskins JA, Johnson NF, eds. *Mechanisms in Fibre Carcinogenesis*. New
13 York: Plenum Press, pp. 231–251.
14
15 Larsen ES [1942]. Alkalic rocks of Iron Hill, Gunnison County, Colorado. U.S.
16 Geological Survey Professional Paper 197-A, 64p.
17
18 Lawler AB, Mandel JS, Schuman LM, Lubin JH [1985]. A retrospective cohort mortality
19 study of iron ore (hematite) miners in Minnesota. *J Occup Med* 27:507–517.
20
21 Leake BE [1978]. Nomenclature of amphiboles. *Can Mineral* 16:501–520.
22
23 Leake BE, Woolley AR, Arps CES, Birch WD, Gilbert CM, Grice JD, Hawthorne FC,
24 Kato A, Kisch HF, Krivovichev VG, Linthout K, Laird J, Mandarino JA, Maresch WV,
25 Nickel EH, Rock NMS, Schumacher JC, Smith DC, Stephenson NCN, Ungaretti L,
26 Whittaker EJW, Youzhi G [1997]. Nomenclature of the amphiboles: report of the
27 Subcommittee on Amphiboles of the International Mineralogical Association
28 Commission on new minerals and mineral names. *Can Mineral* 35:219–246.
29
30 Lee EG, Harper M, Nelson J, Hintz PJ, Andrew ME [2008]. A comparison of the
31 CATHIA-T sampler, the GK2.69 cyclone and the standard cowled sampler for thoracic
32 fiber concentrations at a taconite ore-processing mill. *Ann Occup Hyg* 52:55–62.
33
34 Lee YCG, deKlerk NH, Henderson DK, Musk AW [2002]. Malignant mesothelioma. In:
35 Hendrick DJ, Burge PS, Beckett WS, Churg A, eds. *Occupational Disorders of the Lung:
36 Recognition, Management, and Prevention*. Oxford, UK: WB Saunders, pp. 359–379.
37
38 Leineweber JP [1984]. Solubility of fibers *in vitro* and *in vivo*. In: *Biological Effects of
39 Man-Made Mineral Fibers, Vol. 2*. Copenhagen: World Health Organization, pp. 87–101.
40
41 Light WG, Wei ET [1977a]. Surface charge and hemolytic activity of asbestos. *Environ
42 Res* 13:135–145.
43
44 Light WG, Wei ET [1977b]. Surface charge and asbestos toxicity. *Nature* 265:537–539.

- 1
2 Lilienfeld DE, Mandel JS, Coin P, Schuman LM [1988]. Projection of asbestos related
3 diseases in the United States, 1985–2009. *I. Cancer. Br J Ind Med* 45:283–291.
4
5 Lippmann M [1988]. Asbestos exposure indices. *Environ Res* 46:86–106.
6
7 Lippmann M [1990]. Effects of fiber characteristics on lung deposition, retention, and
8 disease. *Environ Health Perspect* 88:311–317.
9
10 Lippmann M, Esch JL [1988]. Effect of lung airway branching pattern and gas
11 composition on particle deposition. I. Background and literature review. *Exp Lung Res*
12 14:311–320.
13
14 Lippmann M, Schlesinger RB [1984]. Interspecies comparisons of particle deposition
15 and mucociliary clearance in tracheobronchial airways. *J Toxicol Environ Health*
16 14:141–169
17
18 Lippmann M, Yeates, Albert RE [1980]. Deposition, retention, and clearance of inhaled
19 particles. *Br J Ind Med* 37:337–362.
20
21 Lu J, Keane MJ, Ong T, Wallace WE [1994]. *In vitro* genotoxicity studies of chrysotile
22 asbestos fibers dispersed in simulated pulmonary surfactant. *Mutat Res* 320:253–259.
23
24 Mandel J (mand0125@umn.edu) [2008]. Question about Conwed. Private e-mail
25 message to Paul Middendorf (pkm2@cdc.gov), February 27.
26
27 Maples KR, Johnson NF [1992]. Fiber-induced hydroxyl radical formation: correlation
28 with mesothelioma induction in rats and humans. *Carcinogenesis* 13:2035–2039.
29
30 Marchant GE, Amen MA, Bullock CH, Carter CM, Johnson KA, Reynolds JW, Connelly
31 FR, Crane AE [2002]. A synthetic vitreous fiber (SVF) occupational exposure database:
32 Implementing the SVF health and safety partnership program. *App Occup Environ Hyg*
33 17:276–285.
34
35 Marsh JP, Mossman BT [1988]. Mechanisms of induction of ornithine decarboxylase
36 activity in tracheal epithelial cells by asbestiform minerals. *Cancer Res* 48:709–714.
37
38 Mast RW, Maxim LD, Utell MJ, Walker AM [2000]. Refractory ceramic fiber:
39 toxicology, epidemiology, and risk analyses – a review. *Inhal Toxicol* 12:359–399.
40
41 Maxim LD, McConnell EE [2001]. Interspecies comparisons of the toxicity of asbestos
42 and synthetic vitreous fibers: a weight-of-the-evidence approach. *Regul Toxicol*
43 *Pharmacol* 33:319–342.
44

1 Maynard A [2002]. Thoracic size-selection of fibres: dependence of penetration on fibre
2 length for five thoracic samplers. *Ann Occup Hyg* 46:511–522.

3
4 Maynard A, Aitken RJ, Butz T, Colvin V, Donaldson, K, Oberdorster G, Philbert MA,
5 Ryan J, Seaton A, Stone V, Tinkle SS, Tran L, Walker NG, Warheit D [2006]. Safe
6 handling of nanotechnology. *Nature* 444:267–269.

7
8 McDonald JC, McDonald AD [1997]. Chrysotile, tremolite and carcinogenicity. *Ann*
9 *Occup Hyg* 41:699–705.

10
11 McDonald JC, Gibbs GW, Liddel FDK, McDonald AD [1978]. Mortality after long
12 exposure to cummingtonite-grunerite. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 118:271–277.

13
14 McDonald JC, Harris J, Armstrong B [2004]. Mortality in a cohort of vermiculite miners
15 exposed to fibrous amphibole in Libby, Montana. *Occup Environ Med* 61:363–366.

16
17 MDH (Minnesota Department of Health) [2007]. Mesothelioma in Northeastern
18 Minnesota and Two Occupational Cohorts: 2007 Update. Center for Occupational Health
19 and Safety, Chronic Disease and Environmental Epidemiology Section, Minnesota
20 Department of Health, St. Paul, MN.

21 [<http://www.health.state.mn.us/divs/hpcd/cdee/mcss/documents/nemeso1207.pdf>]. Date
22 accessed: June 30, 2008.

23
24 Meeker GP, Bern AM., Brownfield IK, Lowers HA, Sutley SJ, Hoefen TM, Vance JS
25 [2003]. The composition and morphology of amphiboles from the Rainy Creek Complex,
26 near Libby, Montana. *Am Mineral* 88:1955–1969.

27
28 Mesothelioma Virtual Bank [2007]. Mesothelioma Tissue Resources Available for Your
29 Research. (Website update November 29, 2007). [<http://www.mesotissue.org/>]. Date
30 accessed: January 10, 2007.

31
32 Middendorf P, Graff R, Keller L, and Simmons C [2007]. National Occupational
33 Exposure Database: AIHA-NIOSH alliance efforts to develop a pilot. American
34 Industrial Hygiene Conference and Exhibition (AIHce), Philadelphia, PA.

35
36 Miller A [2007]. Radiographic readings for asbestosis: misuse of science—validation of
37 the ILO classification. *Am J Ind Med* 50:63–67.

38
39 Miller AL, Hoover, MD, Mitchell DM, Stapleton BP [2007]. The Nanoparticle
40 Information Library (NIL): A prototype for linking and sharing emerging data. *J Occup*
41 *Environ Hyg* 4:D131–D134.

42
43 Moolgavkar SH, Brown RC, Turim J [2001]. Biopersistence, fiber length, and cancer risk
44 assessment for inhaled fibers. *Inhal Toxicol* 13:755–772.

1
2 Morrow PE [1985]. Pulmonary clearance. In: Hatch TF, Esmen NA, Mehlman MA, eds.
3 Advances in Modern Environmental Toxicology, Vol. VIII, Occupational and Industrial
4 Hygiene: Concepts and Methods. Princeton: Princeton Scientific Publishers, pp. 183–
5 202.

6
7 Mossman BT [2008]. Assessment of the pathogenic potential of asbestiform vs.
8 nonasbestiform particulates (cleavage fragments) in *in vitro* (cell or organ culture)
9 models and bioassays. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 52(Suppl 1):S200–S203.

10
11 Mossman BT, Marsh JP [1989]. Evidence supporting a role for active oxygen species in
12 asbestos-induced toxicity and lung disease. Environ Health Perspect 81:91–94.

13
14 Mossman B, Sesko A [1990]. *In vitro* assays to predict the pathogenicity of mineral
15 fibers. Toxicology 60:53–61.

16
17 Mossman BT, Borm PJ, Castranova V, Costa DL, Donaldson K, Kleeberger SR [2007].
18 Mechanisms of action of inhaled fibers, particles and nanoparticles in lung and
19 cardiovascular diseases. Part Fibre Toxicol 4:4 doi:10.1186/1743-8977-4-4.

20
21 Mossman BT, Faux S, Janssen Y, Jimenez LA, Timblin C, Zanella C, Goldberg J, Walsh
22 E, Barchowsky A, Driscoll K [1997]. Cell signaling pathways elicited by asbestos.
23 Environ Health Perspect 105(Suppl 5):1121–1125.

24
25 Mossman BT, Jean L, Landesman JM [1983]. Studies using lectins to determine mineral
26 interactions with cellular membranes. Environ Health Perspect 51:23–25.

27
28 Mossman BT, Lounsbury KM, Reddy SP [2006]. Oxidants and signaling by mitogen-
29 activated protein kinases in lung epithelium. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol 34:666–669.

30
31 MSHA (Mine Safety and Health Administration) [2002]. Mine employment and
32 commodity data. Arlington, VA: U.S. Department of Labor, Mine Safety and Health
33 Administration, Directorate of Program Evaluation and Information Resources.
34 Unpublished. [<http://www.msha.gov/STATS/STATINFO.htm>]. Date accessed: August
35 13, 2008.

36
37 MSHA (Mine Safety and Health Administration) [2005]. Asbestos exposure limit;
38 Proposed rule. Fed Regist July 29, 2005, pp. 43950–43989.
39 [<http://edocket.access.gpo.gov/2005/pdf/05-14510.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

40
41 MSHA (Mine Safety and Health Administration) [2008]. Asbestos exposure limit; Final
42 Rule. Fed Regist February 29, 2008, pp.11283–11304.
43 [<http://edocket.access.gpo.gov/2008/pdf/E8-3828.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

- 1 Muhle H, Pott F [2000]. Asbestos as a reference material for fiber-induced cancer. Int
2 Arch Occup Environ Health 73:53–59.
3
- 4 Muhle H, Pott F, Bellmann B, Takenaka S, Ziem U [1987]. Inhalation and injection
5 experiments in rats for testing MMMF on carcinogenicity. Ann Occup Hyg 31:755–764.
6
- 7 Myojo T [1999]. A simple method to determine the length distribution of fibrous
8 aerosols. Aerosol Sci Technol 30:30–39.
9
- 10 Nagle JF [1993]. Area/lipid of bilayers from NMR. Biophys J 64:1476–1481.
11
- 12 NIOSH [1976]. Revised Recommended Asbestos Standard. National Institute for
13 Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHEW (NIOSH) Publication No. 77-
14 169. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/77-169/>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
15
- 16 NIOSH [1980]. Occupational Exposure to Talc Containing Asbestos. National Institute
17 for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHEW (NIOSH) Publication No.
18 80-115.
19 [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/review/public/099/pdfs/TalcContainingAsbestosTR.pdf>]. Date
20 accessed: June 30, 2008.
21
- 22 NIOSH [1990a]. Comments of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
23 on the Occupational Safety and Health Administration’s Notice of Proposed Rulemaking
24 on Occupational Exposure to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite, and Actinolite. OSHA
25 Docket No. H-033d, April 9, 1990.
26 [[http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/review/public/099/pdfs/AsbestosTestimony_April%209_1990](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/review/public/099/pdfs/AsbestosTestimony_April%209_1990.pdf)
27 [.pdf](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/review/public/099/pdfs/AsbestosTestimony_April%209_1990.pdf)]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
28
- 29 NIOSH [1990b]. Testimony of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
30 on the Occupational Safety and Health Administration’s Notice of Proposed Rulemaking
31 on Occupational Exposure to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite, and Actinolite. OSHA
32 Docket No. H-033d, May 9, 1990.
33 [http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/review/public/099/pdfs/asbestos_testimony_May9.pdf]. Date
34 accessed: June 30, 2008.
35
- 36 NIOSH [1994a]. Method 7400 ‘Asbestos and Other Fibers by PCM’, Issue 2 (8/15/94).
37 In: NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods (Fourth Edition). National Institute for
38 Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 2003-
39 154. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/nmam/pdfs/7400.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
40
- 41 NIOSH [1994b]. Method 7402 ‘Asbestos by TEM’, Issue 2 (8/15/94). In: NIOSH Manual
42 of Analytical Methods (Fourth Edition). National Institute for Occupational Safety and
43 Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 2003-154.
44 [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/nmam/pdfs/7402.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

1
2 NIOSH [1998]. Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to
3 Metalworking Fluids. Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 98-102.
4 [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/98-102.html>]. Date accessed: March 14, 2008.

5
6 NIOSH [2002]. Comments of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
7 on the Mine Safety and Health Administration Advanced Notice of Proposed Rulemaking
8 on Measuring and Controlling Asbestos Exposure. June 27, 2002.
9 [<http://www.msha.gov/regs/comments/asbestos/docket/comments/ab24comm-31.pdf>].
10 Date accessed: June 29, 2008.

11
12 NIOSH [2003a]. Monitoring of Diesel Particulate Exhaust in the Workplace, Chapter Q.
13 In: NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods (Fourth Edition). National Institute for
14 Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 2003-
15 154. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/nmam/pdfs/chapter-q.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

16
17 NIOSH [2003b]. Method 7603 ‘Quartz in Coal Mine Dust, by IR (redemption)’, Issue 3
18 (3/15/03). In: NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods (Fourth Edition). National Institute
19 for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No.
20 2003-154. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/nmam/pdfs/7603.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30,
21 2008.

22
23 NIOSH [2005]. Comments on the MSHA Proposed Rule on Asbestos Exposure Limit,
24 October 13, 2005. [[http://www.msha.gov/regs/comments/05-14510/1219-ab24-comm-
25 103.pdf](http://www.msha.gov/regs/comments/05-14510/1219-ab24-comm-103.pdf)]. Date accessed: June 29, 2008.

26
27 NIOSH [2006]. Pocket Guide to Chemical Hazards. National Institute for Occupational
28 Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 2005-149.
29 [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/npg>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

30
31 NIOSH [2007a]. Asbestos: Geometric mean exposures by major industry division,
32 MSHA and OSHA samples, 1979–2003.
33 [[http://www2a.cdc.gov/drds/WorldReportData/FigureTableDetails.asp?FigureTableID=5
34 03&GroupRefNumber=F01-05](http://www2a.cdc.gov/drds/WorldReportData/FigureTableDetails.asp?FigureTableID=503&GroupRefNumber=F01-05)]. Date accessed: June 29, 2008.

35
36 NIOSH [2007b]. National Occupational Respiratory Mortality System (NORMS).
37 [<http://webappa.cdc.gov/ords/norms.html>]. Date accessed: January 26, 2007.

38
39 NIOSH [2007c]. Chest Radiography: B Reader information for medical professionals.
40 [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/chestradiography/breader-info.html>]. Date accessed:
41 April 15, 2008.
42

- 1 NIOSH [2007d]. Chest Radiography: Ethical considerations for B Readers (Topic Page
2 posted March 28, 2007). [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/chestradiography/breader-ethics.html>]. Date accessed: April 15, 2008.
3
4
- 5 NIOSH [2007e]. Chest Radiography: Recommended Practices for Reliable Classification
6 of Chest Radiographs by B Readers (Draft Topic Page posted March 28, 2007). Found at
7 <http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/chestradiography/radiographic-classification.html>]. Date
8 accessed: January 9, 2008.
9
- 10 NIOSH [2008a]. Application of the ILO International Classification of Radiographs of
11 Pneumoconioses to Digital Chest Radiographic Images: A NIOSH Scientific Workshop.
12 National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, DHHS (NIOSH)
13 Publication No. 2008-139. [<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2008-139/>]. Date accessed:
14 November 5, 2008.
15
- 16 NIOSH [2008b]. Strategic Plan for NIOSH Nanotechnology Research and Guidance:
17 Filling the Knowledge Gaps. [http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/nanotech/strat_plan.html].
18 Date accessed: June 11, 2008.
19
- 20 Nolan RP, Langer AM, Oechsle GE, Addison J, and Colflesh DE [1991]. Association of
21 tremolite habit with biological potential. In: Brown RC, Hoskins JA, Johnson NF, eds.
22 Mechanisms in Fibre Carcinogenesis. New York: Plenum Press, pp. 231–251.
23
- 24 Nordmann M, Sorge A [1941]. Lungenkrebs durch asbestsaub im tierversuch. Z
25 Krebsforsch 51:168–182. [Abstracted in IARC 1977].
26
- 27 NRC (National Research Council) [1984]. Asbestiform Fibers - Nonoccupational Health
28 Risks. National Academy Press. [<http://www.nap.edu/openbook.php?isbn=0309034469>].
29 Date accessed: June 30, 2008.
30
- 31 NSSGA (National Stone Sand and Gravel Association) [2005]. Submission to MSHA
32 RIN 1219-AB24 - Proposed Rule - Asbestos Exposure Limit. November 18, 2005.
33 [<http://www.msha.gov/regs/comments/05-14510/1219-ab24-comm-110.pdf>]. Date
34 accessed: June 30, 2008.
35
- 36 Oberdorster G [1994]. Macrophage-associated responses to chrysotile. Ann Occup Hyg
37 38:601–615.
38
- 39 Oberdorster G, Morrow PE, Spurny K [1988]. Size dependent lymphatic short term
40 clearance of amosite fibers in the lung. Ann Occup Hyg 32:149–156.
41
- 42 Oehlert GW [1991]. A reanalysis of the Stanton et al. pleural sarcoma data. Environ Res
43 54:194–205.
44

1 Oestenstad K, Honda Y, Delzell, E, Brill I [2002]. Assessment of historical exposures to
2 talc at a mining and milling facility. *Ann Occup Hyg* 46:587–596.

3
4 Okayasu R, Wu L, Hei TK [1999]. Biological effects of naturally occurring and man-
5 made fibres: *in vitro* cytotoxicity and mutagenesis in mammalian cells.
6 *Br J Cancer* 79:1319–1324.

7
8 Ollikainen T, Linnainmaa K, Kinnula VL [1999]. DNA single strand breaks induced by
9 asbestos fibers in human pleural mesothelial cells *in vitro*. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 33:153–
10 160.

11
12 OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration) [1990]. U.S. Department of
13 Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Fed Regist* 55:29712–29753.

14
15 OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration) [1992]. Occupational Exposure
16 to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite and Actinolite, Preamble to Final Rule, Section 5 -
17 V. Health Effects. *57 Fed Regist* 24310–24330, June 8, 1992.

18
19 OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration) [1998]. Sampling and
20 Analytical Methods, Asbestos in Air, Method ID-160.
21 [<http://www.osha.gov/dts/sltc/methods/inorganic/id160/id160.html>]. Date accessed: April
22 8, 2008.

23
24 OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration) [2008]. Safety and Health
25 Topics: Asbestos. [<http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/asbestos/index.html>]. Date accessed:
26 January 28, 2008.

27
28 Pang TWS [2000]. Precision and accuracy of asbestos fiber counting by phase contrast
29 microscopy. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J* 61:529–538.

30
31 Pang TWS [2002]. The Quality of Fiber Count Data of Slides with Relocatable Fields.
32 Paper presented at the 2002 Johnson Conference: A Review of Asbestos Monitoring
33 Methods and Results for the New York World Trade Center, Libby Vermiculite, and
34 Fibrous Talc, July 21–25, 2002, Johnson State College, Johnson, VT.

35
36 Pang TWS, Harper M [2008]. The quality of fiber counts using improved slides with
37 relocatable fields. *J Environ Monit* 10:89–95.

38
39 Pang TWS, Dicker WL, Nazar MA [1984]. An evaluation of the precision and accuracy
40 of the direct transfer method for the analysis of asbestos fibers with comparison to the
41 NIOSH method. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J* 45:329–335.

42
43 Pang TWS, Schonfeld FA, Patel K [1989]. An improved membrane filter technique for
44 evaluation of asbestos fibers. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J* 50:174–180.

- 1
2 Pelé JP, Calvert R [1983]. Hemolysis by chrysotile asbestos fibers. I. Influence of the
3 sialic acid content in human, rat, and sheep red blood cell membranes. *J Toxicol Environ*
4 *Health* 12:827–840.
5
6 Petersen E U, Totten F, and Guida M [1993]. Tremolite-Talc occurrences in the Balmat-
7 Edwards District: In Petersen EU, Slack J, eds., *Selected Mineral Deposits of Vermont*
8 *and the Adirondack Mountains, N.Y.* Volume 17, pp. 54-64.
9
10 Peto J, Seidman H, Selifoff IJ [1982]. Mesothelioma mortality in asbestos workers:
11 implications for models of carcinogenesis and risk assessment. *Br J Cancer* 45:124–135.
12
13 Plumlee GS, Ziegler TL [2006]. The medical geochemistry of dusts, soils, and other earth
14 materials. In; Lollar BS, ed. *Treatise on Geochemistry*. Volume 9. Elsevier, online
15 version. [<http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/referenceworks/0080437516>]. Date
16 accessed: August 8, 2008.
17
18 Plumlee GS, Morman SA, Ziegler TL [2006]. The toxicological geochemistry of earth
19 materials: an overview of processes and the interdisciplinary methods used to understand
20 them. *Rev Mineral Geochem* 64:5–57.
21
22 Poland CA, Duffin R, Kinloch I, Maynard A, Wallace WAH, Seaton A, Stone V, Brown
23 S, MacNee W, Donaldson K [2008]. Carbon nanotubes introduced into the abdominal
24 cavity of mice show asbestos-like pathogenicity in a pilot study. *Nat Nanotechnol*, 3:423-
25 428.
26
27 Pott F, Huth F, Friedrichs KH [1974]. Tumorigenic effect of fibrous dusts in
28 experimental animals. *Environ Health Perspect* 9:313–315.
29
30 Pott F, Ziem U, Reiffer FJ, Huth F, Ernst H, Mohr U [1987]. Carcinogenicity studies on
31 fibres, metal compounds, and some other dusts in rats. *Exp Pathol* 2:129–152.
32
33 Rice C, Heineman EF [2003]. An asbestos job exposure matrix to characterize fiber type,
34 length, and relative exposure intensity. *App Occup Environ Hyg* 18:506–512.
35
36 Riganti C, Aldieri E, Bergandi L, Tomatis M, Fenoglio I, Costamagna C, Fubini B, Bosia
37 A, Ghigo D [2003]. Long and short fiber amosite asbestos alters at a different extent the
38 redox metabolism in human lung epithelial cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 193:106–115.
39
40 Robinson BWS, Lake RA [2005]. Advances in malignant mesothelioma. *N Eng J Med*
41 353:1591–1603.
42

- 1 Robinson C, van Bruggen I, Segal A, Dunham M, Sherwood A, Koentgen F, Robinson
2 BW, Lake RA [2006]. A novel SV40 TAg transgenic model of asbestos-induced
3 mesothelioma: malignant transformation is dose dependent. *Cancer Res* 66:10786–10794.
4
- 5 Rohs AM, Lockey JE, Dunning KK, Shukla R, Fan H, Hilbert T, Borton E, Wiot J,
6 Meyer C, Shipley RT, Lemasters GK, Kapil V [2008]. Low-level fiber-induced
7 radiographic changes caused by Libby vermiculite: a 25-year follow-up study. *Am J*
8 *Respir Crit Care Med* 177:630–637.
9
- 10 Rooker SJ, Vaughan NP, Le Guen JM [1982]. On the visibility of fibers by phase contrast
11 microscopy. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J* 43:505–515.
12
- 13 Ross RM [2003]. The clinical diagnosis of asbestosis in this century requires more than a
14 chest radiograph. *Chest* 124:1120–1128.
15
- 16 Ross M, Virta RL [2001]. Occurrence, production and uses of asbestos. In:
17 Nolan RP, Langer AM, Ross M, Wicks FJ, Martin RF, eds. *The*
18 *Health Effects of Chrysotile Asbestos—Contribution of Science to Risk-Management*
19 *Decisions*. *Can Mineral (Special Publication 5)*:79–88.
20
- 21 Ross M, Nolan RP, Nord GL [2007]. The search for asbestos within the Peter Mitchell
22 Taconite iron ore mine, near Babbitt, Minnesota. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 52(Suppl 1):
23 S43–S50.
24
- 25 Scherpereel A, Lee YC [2007]. Biomarkers for mesothelioma. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*
26 13:339–443.
27
- 28 Schimmelpfeng J, Drosselmeyer E, Hofheinz V, Seidel A [1992]. Influence of surfactant
29 components and exposure geometry on the effects of quartz and asbestos on alveolar
30 macrophages. *Environ Health Perspect* 97:225–231.
31
- 32 Schins RPF [2002]. Mechanisms of genotoxicity of particles and fibers. *Inhal Toxicol*
33 14:57–78.
34
- 35 Schlesinger RB [1985]. Comparative deposition of inhaled aerosols in experimental
36 animals and humans: a review. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 15:197–214.
37
- 38 Scholze H, Conradt R [1987]. An *in vitro* study of the chemical durability of siliceous
39 fibres. *Ann Occup Hyg* 31:683–692.
40
- 41 Scott CC, Botelho RJ, Grinstein S [2003]. Phagosome maturation: a few bugs in the
42 system. *J Memb Biol* 193:137–152.
43

- 1 Searl A [1994]. A review of the durability of inhaled fibres and options for the design of
2 safer fibrils. *Ann Occup Hyg* 38:839–855.
3
- 4 Selevan SG, Dement JM, Wagoner JK, Froines JR [1979]. Mortality patterns among
5 miners and millers of nonasbestiform talc: preliminary report. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*
6 2:273–284.
7
- 8 Sesko A, Mossman B [1989]. Sensitivity of hamster tracheal epithelial cells to
9 asbestiform minerals modulated by serum and by transforming growth factor β -1. *Cancer*
10 *Res* 49:2743–2749.
11
- 12 Shatos MA, Doherty JM, Marsh JP, Mossman BT [1987]. Prevention of asbestos-induced
13 cell death in rat lung fibroblasts and alveolar macrophages by scavengers of active
14 oxygen species. *Environ Res* 44:103–116.
15
- 16 Shvedova AA, Kisin ER, Mercer R, Murray AR, Johnson VJ, Potapovich AI, Tyurina
17 YY, Gorelik O, Arepalli S, Schwegler-Berry D, Hubbs AF, Antonini J, Evans DE, Ku B,
18 Ramsey D, Maynard A, Kagan VE, Castranova V, Baron P [2005]. Unusual
19 inflammatory and fibrogenic pulmonary responses to single-walled carbon nanotubes in
20 mice. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 289:L698–L708.
21
- 22 Shvedova AA, Kisin E, Murray AR, Johnson VJ, Gorelik O, Arepalli S, Hubbs AF,
23 Mercer RR, Keohavong P, Sussman N, Jin J, Yin J, Stone S, Chen BT, Deye G, Maynard
24 A, Castranova V, Baron PA, Kagan VE [2008]. Inhalation versus aspiration of single
25 walled carbon nanotubes in C57BL/6 mice: inflammation, fibrosis, oxidative stress and
26 mutagenesis. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* (In press)
27
- 28 Siegel W, Smith AR, Greenburg L [1943]. The dust hazard in tremolite talc mining,
29 including roentgenological findings in talc workers. *Am J Roentgenol* 49:11–29.
30
- 31 Siegrist HG, Wylie AG [1980]. Characterizing and discriminating the shape of asbestos
32 particles. *Environ Res* 23:348–361.
33
- 34 Singh SV, Rahman Q [1987]. Interrelationship between hemolysis and lipid peroxidation
35 of human erythrocytes induced by silicic acid and silicate dusts. *J Appl Toxicol* 7:91–96.
36
- 37 Smith WE, Hubert DD, Sobel HJ, Marquet E [1979]. Biologic tests of tremolite in
38 hamsters. In: Dement JA, Lemen RA, eds., *Dusts and Disease*. Pathtox Publishers, Inc.
39 Park Forest South, Illinois, pp. 335–339.
40
- 41 Snipes MB [1996]. Current information on lung overload in nonrodent mammals:
42 contrast with rats. In: Mauderly JL, McCunney RJ, eds. *Particle Overload in the Rat Lung*
43 *and Lung Cancer: Implications for Human Risk Assessment*. Proceedings of a conference

- 1 held at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, March 29–30, 1995. Washington, DC:
2 Taylor and Francis, pp. 73–90.
3
- 4 Speit G [2002]. Appropriate *in vitro* test conditions for genotoxicity testing of fibers.
5 *Inhal Toxicol* 14:79-90.
6
- 7 Spurny KR [1983]. Measurement and analysis of chemically changed mineral fibers after
8 experiments *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *Environ Health Perspect* 51:343–355.
9
- 10 Stanton MF, Laynard M, Tegeris A, Miller E, May M, Kent E [1977]. Carcinogenicity of
11 fibrous glass: pleural response in the rat in relation to fiber dimension. *J Natl Cancer Inst*
12 58:587–603.
13
- 14 Stanton MF, Layard M, Tegeris A, Miller E, May M, Morgan E, A Smith [1981].
15 Relation of particle dimension to carcinogenicity in amphibole asbestoses and other
16 fibrous minerals. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 67:965–975.
17
- 18 Stayner LT, Dankovic D, Lemen RA [1996]. Occupational exposure to chrysotile
19 asbestos and cancer risk: a review of the amphibole hypothesis. *Am J Pub Health*
20 86:179–186.
21
- 22 Stayner L, Kuempel E, Gilbert S, Hein M, Dement J [2007]. An epidemiologic study of
23 the role of chrysotile asbestos fiber dimensions in determining respiratory disease risk in
24 exposed workers. *Occup Environ Med* 65:613–619.
25
- 26 Stayner LT, Smith R, Bailer J, Gilbert S, Steenland K, Dement J, Brown D, Lemen R
27 [1997]. Exposure-response analysis of respiratory disease risk associated with
28 occupational exposure to chrysotile asbestos. *Occup Environ Med* 54:646–652.
29
- 30 Steenland K, Brown D [1995]. Mortality study of gold miners exposed to silica and
31 nonasbestiform amphibole minerals: an update with 14 more years of followup. *Am J Ind*
32 *Med* 27:217–229.
33
- 34 Stille WT, Tabershaw IR [1982]. The mortality experience of upstate New York talc
35 workers. *J Occup Med* 24:480–484.
36
- 37 Su WC, Cheng Y [2005]. Deposition of fiber in the human nasal airway. *Aerosol Sci*
38 *Technol* 29:888–901.
39
- 40 Sullivan P [2007]. Vermiculite, respiratory disease and asbestos exposure in Libby,
41 Montana: Update of a cohort mortality study. *Environ Health Perspect* 115:579–585.
42
- 43 Sussman RG, Cohen BS, Lippmann M [1999a]. Asbestos fiber deposition in human
44 tracheobronchial cast. I. Experimental. *Inhal Toxicol* 3:145-160.

- 1
2 Sussman RG, Cohen BS, Lippmann M [1999b]. Asbestos fiber deposition in human
3 tracheobronchial cast. II. Empirical model. *Inhal Toxicol* 3:161-178.
4
5 Suzuki Y, Yuen S [2001]. Asbestos tissue burden stud on human malignant
6 mesothelioma. *Ind Health* 39:150–160.
7
8 Suzuki Y, Yuen S [2002]. Asbestos fibers contributing to the induction of human
9 malignant mesothelioma. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 982:160–176.
10
11 Suzuki Y, Yuen S, Ashley R [2005]. Short thin asbestos fibers contribute to the
12 development of human malignant mesothelioma: pathological evidence. *Int J Hyg*
13 *Environ Health* 208:201–210.
14
15 Swain WA, O'Byrne KJ, Faux SP [2004]. Activation of p38 MAP kinase by asbestos in
16 rat mesothelial cells is mediated by oxidative stress. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*
17 286:L859–65.
18
19 Takeuchi T, Nakajima M, Morimoto K [1999]. A human cell system for detecting
20 asbestos cytogenotoxicity *in vitro*. *Mutat Res* 438:63–70.
21
22 Taylor LE, Brown TJ, Benham AJ, Lusty PAJ, Minchin DJ [2006]. World Mineral
23 Production 2000–2004. British Geological Survey, Keyworth, Nottingham.
24
25 Timbrell V [1982]. Deposition and retention of fibres in the human lung. *Ann Occup Hyg*
26 26:347–369.
27
28 Tossavainen A [2005]. World asbestos epidemic. Paper J1, Presented at The First
29 International Occupational Hygiene Association (IOHA) International Scientific
30 Conference (ISC) in Africa and IOHA 6th ISC, Pilanesberg, South Africa.
31 [<http://www.saioh.org/ioha2005/Proceedings/Papers/SSJ/PaperJ1web.pdf>]. Date
32 accessed: November 20, 2006.
33
34 Tran CL, Buchanan D [2000]. Development of a biomathematical lung model to describe
35 the exposure-dose relationship for inhaled dust among U.K. coal miners. Institute of
36 Occupational Medicine Research Report TM/00/02. Edinburgh, UK: Institute of
37 Occupational Medicine.
38
39 Unfried K, Schürkes C, Abel J [2002]. Distinct spectrum of mutations induced by
40 crocidolite asbestos: clue for 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine-dependent mutagenesis *in vivo*.
41 *Cancer Res* 62:99–104.
42
43 U.S. Senate [2007]. S. 742 Ban Asbestos in America Act of 2007 (Engrossed as Agreed
44 to or Passed by Senate).

1
2 USGS (U.S. Geological Survey) [2006]. Worldwide Asbestos Supply and Consumption
3 Trends from 1900 through 2003. [<http://pubs.usgs.gov/circ/2006/1298/c1298.pdf>]. Date
4 accessed: March 12, 2008.

5
6 USGS (U.S. Geological Survey) [2007]. Mineral commodity summaries 2007: U.S.
7 Geological Survey, 199 p.
8 [<http://minerals.usgs.gov/minerals/pubs/mcs/2007/mcs2007.pdf>]. Date accessed: March
9 12, 2008.

10
11 USGS (U.S. Geological Survey) [2008]. Mineral commodity summaries 2008: U.S.
12 Geological Survey, 199 p.
13 [<http://minerals.usgs.gov/minerals/pubs/mcs/2008/mcs2008.pdf>]. Date accessed:
14 February 2, 2008.

15
16 Vallyathan V, Hanon N, Booth J, Schwegler D, Sepulveda M [1985]. Cytotoxicity of
17 native and surface-modified asbestos. In: Beck EG, Bignon J, eds. *In Vitro* Effects of
18 Mineral Dusts. Berlin-Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag, NATO ASI Series, Vol. G3, pp.159–
19 165.

20
21 Vallyathan V, Schwegler D, Reasor M, Stettler L, Clere J, Green FHY [1988].
22 Comparative *in vitro* cytotoxicity and relative pathogenicity of mineral dusts. *Ann Occup*
23 *Hyg* 32:279–289.

24
25 Van Gosen B [2007]. The geology of asbestos in the United States and its practical
26 applications. *Environ Eng Geosci* 13:55–68.

27
28 Vastag E, Matthys H, Kohler D, Gronbeck G, Daikeler G [1985]. Mucociliary clearance
29 and airways obstruction in smokers, ex-smokers and normal subjects who never smoked.
30 *Eur J Respir Dis* 66:93–100.

31
32 Vianna NJ, Maslowsky J, Robert S, Spellman G, Patton B [1981]. Malignant
33 mesothelioma: epidemiologic patterns in New York State. *NY State J Med* 81:735–738.
34 Virta RL [2002]. Asbestos: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 02-149, 35 pp.
35 [<http://pubs.usgs.gov/of/2002/of02-149/of02-149.pdf>]. Date accessed: June 30, 2008.

36
37 Vu V, Barrett JC, Roycroft J, Schuman L, Dankovic D, Bbaro P, Martonen T, Pepelko
38 W, Lai D [1996]. Chronic inhalation toxicity and carcinogenicity testing of respirable
39 fibrous particles. Workshop report. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 24:202–212.

40
41 Wagner CJ [1986]. Mesothelioma and mineral fibers, Accomplishments in cancer
42 research 1985 prize year. General Motors Cancer Research Foundation, pp. 60–72.

43

- 1 Wagner JC, Skidmore JW, Hill RJ, Griffiths DM [1985]. Erionite exposure and
2 mesotheliomas in rats. *Br J Cancer* 51:727–730.
3
- 4 Wagner GR, Attfield MD, Parker JE [1993]. Chest radiography in dust-exposed miners:
5 promise and problems, potential and imperfections. *Occup Med*: 8:127–141.
6
- 7 Wagner JC, Berry G, Skidmore JW, Timbrell V [1974]. The effects of the inhalation of
8 asbestos in rats. *Br J Cancer* 29:252–269.
9
- 10 Wagner JC, Chamberlain M, Brown RC, Berry G, Pooley FD, Davies R, Griffiths DM
11 [1982]. Biological effects of tremolite. *Br. J Cancer* 45:352–360.
12
- 13 Walker AM, Loughlin JE, Friedlander ER, Rothman KJ, Dreyer NA [1983]. Projections
14 of asbestos-related disease, 1980-2009. *J Occup Med* 25:409–425.
15
- 16 Wallace WE, Gupta NC, Hubbs AF, Mazza SM, Bishop HA, Keane MJ, Battelli LA, Ma
17 J, Schleiff P [2002]. Cis-4-[F-18] fluoro-L-proline positron emission tomographic (PET)
18 imaging of pulmonary fibrosis in a rabbit model. *J Nucl Med* 43:413–420.
19
- 20 Wallace WE, Keane MJ, Mike PS, Hill CA, Vallyathan V, Regad ED [1992]. Contrasting
21 respirable quartz and kaolin retention of lecithin surfactant and expression of
22 membranolytic activity following phospholipase A2 digestion. *J Toxicol Environ Health*
23 37:391–409.
24
- 25 Walton WH [1954]. Theory of size classification of airborne dust clouds by elutriation.
26 The physics of particle size analysis. *Brit J Appl Phys* 5(Suppl 3):s29–s37.
27
- 28 Wang Y, Faux SP, Hallden G, Kirn DH, Houghton CE, Lemoine NR, Patrick G [2004].
29 Interleukin-1 β and TNF- α promote the transformation of human immortalised
30 mesothelial cells by erionite. *Int J Oncol* 25:173–178.
31
- 32 Warheit D [1989]. Interspecies comparisons of lung responses to inhaled particles and
33 gases. *Crit Rev Toxicol* 20:1–29.
34
- 35 Warheit DB, Overby LH, Gerwyn G, Brody AR [1988]. Pulmonary macrophages are
36 attracted to inhaled particles through complement activation. *Exp Lung Res* 14:51–66.
37
- 38 Watts JF, Wolstenholme J [2003]. An introduction to surface analysis by XPS and AES.
39 New York: Wiley, 224 pp.
40
- 41 Weill H [1994]. Biological effects: asbestos-cement manufacturing. *Ann Occup Hyg*
42 38:533–538.
43

1 Weill H, Hughes JM, Churg AM [2004]. Changing trends in US mesothelioma incidence.
2 Occup Environ Med 61:438–441.

3
4 Weitzman SA, Graceffa P [1984]. Asbestos catalyzes hydroxyl and superoxide radical
5 generation from hydrogen peroxide. Arch Biochem Biophys 228:373–376.

6
7 Werner AJ, Hochella MF, Guthrie GD, Hardy JA, Aust AE, Rimstidt JD [1995].
8 Asbestiform riebeckite (crocidolite) dissolution in the presence of Fe chelators:
9 implications for mineral-induced disease. Am Mineral 80:1093–1103.

10
11 WHO (World Health Organisation) [1997]. Determination of Airborne Fibre Number
12 Concentrations; A Recommended Method, by Phase Contrast Optical Microscopy
13 (Membrane Filter Method). WHO, Geneva.

14
15 Woodworth C, Mossman B, Craighead J [1983]. Induction of squamous metaplasia in
16 organ cultures of hamster trachea by naturally occurring and synthetic fibers. Cancer Res
17 43:4906–4912.

18
19 Wylie AG [1988]. The relationship between the growth habit of asbestos and the
20 dimensions of asbestos fibers. SME Annual Meeting, Phoenix AZ. January 25–28.

21
22 Wylie AG [1993]. Modeling asbestos populations: A fractal approach. Can Mineral
23 30:437–446.

24
25 Wylie AG, Virta RL, Russek E [1985]. Characterizing and discriminating airborne
26 amphibole cleavage fragments and amosite fibers: Implications for the NIOSH method.
27 Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 46:197–201.

28
29 Wylie AG, Virta RL, Segreti JM [1987]. Characterization of mineral population by index
30 particle: implications for the Stanton hypothesis. Environ Res 43:427–439.

31
32 Wylie AG, Bailey KF, Kelse JW, Lee RJ [1993]. The importance of width in asbestos
33 fiber carcinogenicity and its implications for public policy. Am Ind Hyg Assn J 54:239-
34 252.

35
36 Wylie AG, Skinner HC, Marsh J, Snyder H, Garziona C, Hodkinson D, Winters R,
37 Mossman BT [1997]. Mineralogical features associated with cytotoxic and proliferative
38 effects of fibrous talc and asbestos on rodent tracheal epithelial and pleural mesothelial
39 cells. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 147:143–150.

40
41 Wyndham CH, Bezuidenhout BN, Greenacre MJ, Sluis-Cremer GK [1986]. Mortality of
42 middle aged white South African gold miners. Br J Ind Med 43:677–684.

- 1 Yamaguchi R, Hirano T, Ootsuyama Y, Asami S, Tsurudome Y, Fukada S, Yamato H,
2 Tsuda T, Tanaka I, Kasai H [1999]. Increased 8-hydroxyguanine in DNA and its repair
3 activity in hamster and rat lung after intratracheal instillation of crocidolite asbestos.
4 *Jpn J Cancer Res* 90:505–509.
5
- 6 Yang H, Bocchetta M, Kroczyńska B, Elmishad AG, Chen Y, Liu Z, Bubici C, Mossman
7 BT, Pass HI, Testa JR, Franzoso G, Carbone M [2006]. TNF- α inhibits asbestos-induced
8 cytotoxicity via a NF- κ B-dependent pathway, a possible mechanism for asbestos-induced
9 oncogenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 103:10397–10402.
10
- 11 Yano E, Wang Z, Wang X [2001]. Cancer mortality among workers exposed to
12 amphibole-free chrysotile asbestos. *Am J Epidemiol* 154:538–543.
13
- 14 Yu CP, Asgharian B, Yen BM [1986]. Impaction and sedimentation deposition. *Am Ind*
15 *Hyg Assoc J* 47:72–77.
16
- 17 Zeidler-Erdely PC, Calhoun WJ, Mercedes BT, Clark MP, Deye GJ, Baron P, Jones W,
18 Blake T, Castranova V [2006]. *In vitro* cytotoxicity of Manville Code 100 glass fibers:
19 Effect of fiber length on human alveolar macrophages. *Part Fibre Toxicol* 3:5–11.
20
- 21 Zhou Y, Su WC, Cheng YS [2007]. Fiber deposition in the tracheobronchial region:
22 experimental measurements. *Inhal Toxicol* 19:13 1071-1078
23
- 24 Zoltai T [1981]. Amphibole asbestos mineralogy. In: Veblen DR, ed. Amphiboles and
25 Other Hydrous Pyriboles. *Rev Mineral* 9A:237–278.
26
- 27 Zumwalde RD, Ludwig HR, Dement JM [1981]. Industrial Hygiene Report, Homestake
28 Mining Company, Lead, South Dakota. National Institute for Occupational Safety and
29 Health, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. NTIS # PB85-243640, 255 pp.
30
31

5 GLOSSARY

1
2
3 **Acicular**: The very long and very thin, often needle-like shape that characterizes some
4 prismatic crystals. (Prismatic crystals have one elongated dimension and two
5 other dimensions that are approximately equal.) Acicular crystals or fragments do
6 not have the strength, flexibility, or other properties often associated with
7 asbestiform fibers.

8
9 **Actinolite**: An amphibole mineral in the tremolite-ferroactinolite series. Actinolite can
10 occur in both asbestiform and nonasbestiform mineral habits. The asbestiform
11 variety is often referred to as actinolite asbestos.

12
13 **Amphibole**: A group of minerals composed of double chain SiO₄ tetrahedra linked at the
14 vertices and generally containing ions of iron and/or magnesium in their
15 structures. Amphibole minerals are of either igneous or metamorphic origin.
16 Amphiboles can occur in a variety of mineral habits including asbestiform and
17 nonasbestiform.

18
19 **Amosite**: An amphibole mineral in the cummingtonite-grunerite series that occurs in the
20 asbestiform habit. The name amosite is a commercial term derived from the
21 acronym for "Asbestos Mines of South Africa." Amosite is sometimes referred to
22 as "brown asbestos."

23
24 **Anthophyllite**: An amphibole mineral that can occur in both the asbestiform and
25 nonasbestiform mineral habits. The asbestiform variety is referred to as
26 anthophyllite asbestos.

27
28 **Asbestiform**: A specific type of mineral fibrosity in which crystal growth is primarily in
29 one dimension and the crystals form as long, flexible fibers. In minerals
30 occurring in asbestiform habit, fibers form in bundles that can be separated into
31 smaller bundles and ultimately into fibrils.

32
33 **Asbestos**: A generic term for silicate minerals occurring in the asbestiform habit, usually
34 used to refer to those minerals that have been commercially exploited as asbestos,
35 including chrysotile in the serpentine mineral group and tremolite asbestos,
36 actinolite asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos
37 (amosite), and riebeckite asbestos (crocidolite) in the amphibole mineral group.
38 See also *Covered mineral*.

39
40 **Aspect ratio**: The ratio of the length of a particle to its diameter.

41
42 **Biopersistence**: The ability to remain in the lung or other tissue. Biopersistence of
43 mineral fibers is a function of their fragility, solubility, and clearance.

1
2 **Chrysotile:** A mineral in the serpentine mineral group that occurs in the asbestiform
3 habit. Chrysotile generally occurs segregated as parallel fibers in veins or veinlets
4 and can be easily separated into individual fibers or bundles. Often referred to as
5 "white asbestos," chrysotile is used commercially in cement or friction products
6 and for its good spinnability in the making of textile products.

7
8 **Cleavage fragment:** A particle, formed by comminution (i.e., crushing, grinding or
9 breaking) of minerals, often characterized by parallel sides. In contrast to a fibers
10 from an asbestos mineral; EMPs in a population of cleavage fragments are
11 generally wider and shorter, have generally lower aspect ratio, and do not exhibit
12 fibrillar bundling at any level of examination.

13
14 **Countable particle:** A particle that meets specified dimensional criteria and is (to be)
15 counted according to an established protocol. A countable particle under the
16 NIOSH asbestos fiber definition is any acicular crystal, asbestiform fiber,
17 prismatic crystal, or cleavage fragment of a *covered mineral* which is longer than
18 5 µm and has a minimum aspect ratio of 3:1 based on a microscopic analysis of
19 an airborne sample using NIOSH Method 7400 or an equivalent method.

20
21 **Covered mineral:** Minerals encompassed under the existing NIOSH REL for Airborne
22 Asbestos Fibers and Related Elongated Mineral Particles which includes minerals
23 having the crystal structure and elemental composition of the asbestos varieties
24 [chrysotile, riebeckite asbestos (crocidolite), cummingtonite-grunerite asbestos
25 (amosite), anthophyllite asbestos, tremolite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos], or
26 their nonasbestiform analogs (the serpentine minerals antigorite and lizardite, and
27 the amphibole minerals contained in the cummingtonite-grunerite mineral series,
28 the tremolite-ferroactinolite mineral series, and the glaucophane-riebeckite
29 mineral series).

30
31 **Crocidolite:** An asbestiform amphibole mineral in the glaucophane-riebeckite series.
32 Crocidolite, commonly referred to as "blue asbestos," is a varietal name for the
33 asbestiform habit of the mineral riebeckite

34
35 **Durability:** The tendency of particles to resist degradation in lung fluids.

36
37 **Elongated mineral particle (EMP):** Any particle or fragment of a mineral (e.g., fibril or
38 bundle of fibrils acicular, prismatic, or cleavage fragment) with a minimum aspect
39 ratio of 3:1, based on a microscopic analysis of an airborne sample using NIOSH
40 Method 7400 or an equivalent method.

41
42 **Elongated particle (EP):** A particle with a minimum aspect ratio of 3:1, based on a
43 microscopic analysis of an airborne sample using NIOSH Method 7400 or an
44 equivalent method.

1
2 **Fiber:** “Fiber” can be used in a regulatory context or in a mineralogical context.

3
4 In the regulatory context, a fiber is an elongated particle equal to or longer than 5
5 μm with a minimum aspect ratio of 3:1. The dimensional determination is made
6 based on a microscopic analysis of an air sample using NIOSH Method 7400 or
7 an equivalent method.

8
9 In the mineralogical context, a fiber is an elongated crystalline unit that resembles
10 an organic fiber and that can be separated from a bundle or appears to have grown
11 individually in that shape.

12
13 **Fibril:** A single fiber of asbestos which cannot be further separated longitudinally
14 into thinner components without losing its fibrous properties or appearances.

15
16 **Fibrous:** A descriptive characteristic of a mineral composed of parallel, radiating, or
17 interlaced aggregates of fibers, from which the fibers are sometimes separable.

18
19 **Fragility:** The tendency of particles to break into smaller particles.

20
21 **Nonasbestiform:** Not having an asbestiform habit. The massive non-fibrous forms of
22 the asbestos minerals have the same chemical formula and internal crystal
23 structure as the asbestiform variety, but have crystal habits where growth is more
24 equivalent in two or three dimensions instead of primarily one dimension. When
25 milled or crushed, nonasbestiform minerals generally do not break into
26 fibers/fibrils but rather into fragments resulting from cleavage along the two or
27 three growth planes. Often cleavage fragments can appear fibrous.

28
29 **Refractory ceramic fiber (RCF):** An amorphous, synthetic fiber produced by melting
30 and blowing or spinning calcined kaolin clay or a combination of alumina (Al_2O_3)
31 and silicon dioxide (SiO_2). Oxides (such as zirconia, ferric oxide, titanium oxide,
32 magnesium oxide, and calcium oxide) and alkalies may be added.

33
34 **Solid solution series:** A grouping of minerals that includes two or more minerals in
35 which the cations in secondary structural position are similar in chemical
36 properties and size and can be present in variable but frequently limited ratios.

37
38 **Synthetic vitreous fiber (SVF):** Any of a number of manufactured fibers produced by
39 the melting and subsequent fiberization of kaolin clay, sand, rock, slag, etc.
40 Fibrous glass, mineral wool, ceramic fibers, and alkaline earth silicate wools are
41 the major types of SVF, also called man-made mineral fiber (MMMMF) or man-
42 made vitreous fiber (MMVF).

1 **Thoracic-size particle:** A particle with an aerodynamic equivalent diameter that enables
2 it to be deposited in the airways of the lung or the gas exchange region of the lung
3 when inhaled.
4

5 **Tremolite:** An amphibole mineral in the series tremolite-ferroactinolite. Tremolite can
6 occur in both fibrous and non-fibrous mineral habits. The asbestiform variety is
7 often referred to as tremolite asbestos. Due only to changes in the International
8 Mineralogical Association's amphibole nomenclature, subsets of what was
9 formerly referred to as tremolite asbestos are now mineralogically specified as
10 asbestiform winchite and asbestiform richterite.
11